

Web OS Switch Software



9.0 Command Reference

Part Number: 050158, Revision B, October 2001 (Nortel Part Number: 212321-A)



50 Great Oaks Boulevard
San Jose, California 95119
408-360-5500 Main
408-360-5501 Fax
www.alteonwebsystems.com

Copyright 2001 Alteon WebSystems, Inc., 50 Great Oaks Boulevard, San Jose, California 95119, USA. All rights reserved. Part Number: 050158, Revision B.

This document is protected by copyright and distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution, and decompilation. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Alteon WebSystems, Inc. Documentation is provided “as is” without warranty of any kind, either express or implied, including any kind of implied or express warranty of non-infringement or the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

U.S. Government End Users: This document is provided with a “commercial item” as defined by FAR 2.101 (Oct 1995) and contains “commercial technical data” and “commercial software documentation” as those terms are used in FAR 12.211-12.212 (Oct 1995). Government End Users are authorized to use this documentation only in accordance with those rights and restrictions set forth herein, consistent with FAR 12.211- 12.212 (Oct 1995), DFARS 227.7202 (JUN 1995) and DFARS 252.227-7015 (Nov 1995).

Alteon WebSystems, Inc. reserves the right to change any products described herein at any time, and without notice. Alteon WebSystems, Inc. assumes no responsibility or liability arising from the use of products described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by Alteon WebSystems, Inc. The use and purchase of this product does not convey a license under any patent rights, trademark rights, or any other intellectual property rights of Alteon WebSystems, Inc.

Web OS, Alteon, and Alteon WebSystems are trademarks of Alteon WebSystems, Inc. in the United States and certain other countries. Cisco® and EtherChannel® are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. in the United States and certain other countries. Any other trademarks appearing in this manual are owned by their respective companies.

Contents

Preface 11

- Who Should Use This Book 11
- How This Book Is Organized 11
- Typographic Conventions 13
- Contacting Alteon WebSystems 14

Chapter 1: The Command Line Interface 15

- Connecting to the Switch 16
 - Establishing a Console Connection 16
 - Requirements 16
 - Procedure 16
 - Establishing a Telnet Connection 17
 - Using a BOOTP Server 17
 - Running Telnet 17
 - Establishing an SSH Connection 17
 - Running SSH 18
- Accessing the Switch 19
- CLI Versus Setup 21
- Command Line History and Editing 21
- Idle Timeout 21

Chapter 2: First-Time Configuration 23

- Using the Setup Utility 23
 - Information Needed For Setup 23
 - Starting Setup When You Log In 24
 - Stopping and Restarting Setup Manually 25
 - Stopping Setup 25
 - Restarting Setup 25
 - Setup Part 1: Basic System Configuration 25
 - Setup Part 2: Port Configuration 27
 - Setup Part 3: VLANs 30

Setup Part 4: IP Configuration	32
IP Interfaces	32
Default Gateways	33
IP Routing	34
Setup Part 5: Final Steps	35
Setting Passwords	36
Changing the Default Administrator Password	36
Changing the Default User Password	38
Changing the Default Layer 4 Administrator Password	39

Chapter 3: Menu Basics 41

The Main Menu	41
Menu Summary	42
Global Commands	43
Command Line History and Editing	45
Command Line Interface Shortcuts	46
Command Stacking	46
Command Abbreviation	46
Tab Completion	46

Chapter 4: The Information Menu 47

Information Menu	47
SLB Information	51
Show Session Table Information	52
Show All Layer 4 Information	53
IP Routing Information	54
Show All IP Route Information	55
ARP Information	57
Show All ARP Entry Information	58
ARP Address List Information	58
FDB Information	59
Show All FDB Information	60
Clearing Entries from the Forwarding Database	60
System Information	61
Show Last 10 Syslog Messages	62
Link Status Information	63
Spanning Tree Information	64
VLAN Information	66
Port Information	67
IP Information	68
VRRP Information	69

Trunk Group Information	70
Bandwidth Management Information	70
iSD Information	71
Software Enabled Keys	73
Information Dump	73

Chapter 5: The Statistics Menu 75

Statistics Menu	75
Port Statistics Menu	78
Bridging Statistics	79
Ethernet Statistics	79
Interface Statistics	80
Interface Protocol Statistics	80
Link Statistics	80
RMON Statistics	81
CPU Statistics	81
Maintenance Statistics	82
Load Balancing Statistics	83
Real Server SLB Statistics	85
Per Service Octet Counters	85
Real Server Group Statistics	86
Virtual Server SLB Statistics	87
Filter SLB Statistics	87
Port SLB Statistics	88
Port Real Server SLB Statistics	89
Port Real Server Group SLB Statistics	89
Port Virtual Server SLB Statistics	89
Port Filter SLB Statistics	90
Port Maintenance SLB Statistics	90
Global SLB Statistics	91
Real Server Global SLB Statistics	91
Real Server Group Global SLB Statistics	92
Virtual Server Global SLB Statistics	92
Global SLB Maintenance Statistics	93
SLB URL and Redirection Statistics	93
URL SLB Redirection Statistics	93
URL SLB Statistics	94
URL Maintenance Statistics	94
SLB Secure /Socket Layer Statistics	95
RURL Statistics	95

File Transfer Protocol SLB and Filter Statistics	95
Active FTP SLB Parsing and Filter Statistics	96
Passive FTP SLB Parsing Statistics	96
FTP SLB Maintenance Statistics	96
FTP SLB Statistics Dump	97
RTSP SLB Statistics	98
WAP SLB Statistics	98
SLB Maintenance Statistics	99
Clearing the SLB Statistics	100
Bandwidth Management Statistics	102
Bandwidth Management Switch Processor Statistics	103
Bandwidth Management Contract Statistics	103
Bandwidth Management Contract Rate Statistics	104
Bandwidth Management History Statistics	104
Management Processor Statistics	105
STEM Memory Statistics	106
All STEM Memory Statistics	106
DMA Statistics	106
Packet Statistics	107
TCP Statistics	107
UCB Statistics	107
UART Statistics	108
CPU Statistics	108
Interface Statistics	109
IP Statistics	109
ICMP Statistics	110
TCP Statistics	110
UDP Statistics	110
SNMP Statistics	111
FDB Statistics	112
Route Statistics	113
ARP Statistics	113
DNS Statistics	113
VRRP Statistics	114
Statistics Dump	114

Chapter 6: The Configuration Menu 115

Configuration Menu	116
Viewing, Applying, and Saving Changes	118
Viewing Pending Changes	118
Applying Pending Changes	118

Saving the Configuration	119
System Configuration	120
System Host Log Configuration	122
SSH Server Configuration	123
RADIUS Server Configuration	124
NTP Server Configuration	125
User Access Control Configuration	127
Port Configuration	129
Port Link Configuration	131
Temporarily Disabling a Port	132
IP Configuration	133
IP Interface Configuration	134
Default IP Gateway Configuration	135
Default Gateway Metrics	136
IP Static Route Configuration	137
IP Forwarding Configuration	138
Local Network Route Caching Definition	138
Defining IP Address Ranges for the Local Route Cache	139
Routing Information Protocol Configuration	140
Border Gateway Protocol Configuration	141
BGP Peer Configuration	143
BGP Filter Configuration	145
IP Port Configuration	146
Domain Name System Configuration	147
Bootstrap Protocol Relay Configuration	148
Default Gateway Metrics	149
VLAN Configuration	150
Spanning Tree Configuration	152
Bridge Spanning Tree Configuration	153
Spanning Tree Port Configuration	155
SNMP Configuration	156
Port Mirroring Menu	158
Port Mirroring Configuration	158
Trunk Configuration	160
VRRP Configuration	161
Virtual Router Configuration	163
Virtual Router Priority Tracking Configuration	165
Virtual Router Group Configuration	167
Virtual Router Group Priority Tracking Configuration	170
VRRP Interface Configuration	171
VRRP Tracking Configuration	173

Bandwidth Management Configuration	175
Bandwidth Management Contract Configuration	176
Bandwidth Management Policy Configuration	177
Bandwidth Management Current Configuration	178
iSD Menu	179
SSL Offload Application Menu	181
Setup	182
Dump	183
Saving the Active Switch Configuration	183
Loading the Active Switch Configuration	184

Chapter 7: The SLB Configuration Menu 185

SLB Configuration	185
Filtering and Layer 4 (Server Load Balancing)	187
Real Server SLB Configuration	188
Real Server Layer 7 Configuration	192
Real Server Group SLB Configuration	193
Server Load Balancing Metrics	196
Virtual Server SLB Configuration	198
Virtual Server Service Configuration	200
Cookie-Based Persistence	204
SLB Filter Configuration	205
Defining IP Address Ranges for Filters	209
Advanced Filter Configuration	210
Advanced Filter TCP Configuration	213
ICMP Message Types	214
Port SLB Configuration	215
Global SLB Configuration	217
GSLB Remote Site Configuration	220
GSLB Lookup Configuration	221
GSLB Internet Network Preference Lookups Configuration	222
URL Resource Definition	223
Web Cache Redirection Configuration	224
Server Load Balance Resource Configuration	225
RURL Configuration	227
RURL Destination Port Table Configuration	227
WAP Configuration	228
Synchronize Peer Switch Configuration	229
Peer Switch Configuration	230
Advanced Layer 4 Configuration	231
Scriptable Health Checks Configuration	233

WAP Health Checks Configuration 234

Chapter 8: The Operations Menu 235

Operations Menu 235

Operations-Level Port Options 237

Operations-Level Port Mirroring Options 238

Operations-Level SLB Options 240

Operations-Level VRRP Options 241

Operations-Level Bandwidth Management Options 242

Operations-Level IP Options 243

Operations-Level BGP Options 243

Activating Optional Software 244

Removing Optional Software 245

Chapter 9: The Boot Options Menu 247

Updating the Switch Software Image 248

Downloading New Software to Your Web Switch 248

Selecting a Software Image to Run 249

Uploading a Software Image from Your Web Switch 250

Selecting a Configuration Block 251

Resetting the Web Switch 251

Chapter 10: The Maintenance Menu 253

Maintenance Menu 253

System Maintenance Options 254

Forwarding Database Options 255

Debugging Options 256

ARP Cache Options 257

IP Route Manipulation 258

Uencode Flash Dump 259

TFTP System Dump Put 260

Clearing Dump Information 260

Panic Command 261

Unscheduled System Dumps 262

Appendix A: Web OS Syslog Messages 263

LOG_ALERT 264

LOG_CRIT 264

LOG_ERR 265

LOG_NOTICE 269

LOG_WARNING 269

Appendix B: Web OS SNMP Agent 271

Glossary 273

Index 277



Preface

The *Web OS 9.0 Command Reference* describes how to configure and use the Web OS software with the Alteon family of Web switches.

For documentation on installing the switches physically, see the hardware installation guide for your particular switch model.

Who Should Use This Book

This *Command Reference* is intended for network installers and system administrators engaged in configuring and maintaining a network. The administrator should be familiar with Ethernet concepts, IP addressing, the IEEE 802.1d Spanning Tree Protocol, and SNMP configuration parameters.

How This Book Is Organized

Chapter 1, “The Command Line Interface,” describes how to connect to the switch and access the information and configuration menus.

Chapter 2, “First-Time Configuration,” describes how to use the Setup utility for initial switch configuration and how to change the system passwords.

Chapter 3, “Menu Basics,” provides an overview of the menu system, including a menu map, global commands, and menu shortcuts.

Chapter 4, “The Information Menu,” shows how to view switch configuration parameters.

Chapter 5, “The Statistics Menu,” shows how to view switch performance statistics.

Chapter 6, “The Configuration Menu,” shows how to configure switch system parameters, ports, VLANs, Jumbo Frames, Spanning Tree Protocol, SNMP, Port Mirroring, IP Routing, Port Trunking, and more.

Chapter 7, “The SLB Configuration Menu,” shows how to configure Server Load Balancing, Filtering, Global Server Load Balancing, and more.

Chapter 8, “The Operations Menu,” shows how to use commands which affect switch performance immediately, but do not alter permanent switch configurations (such as temporarily disabling ports). The menu describes how to activate or deactivate optional software features.

Chapter 9, “The Boot Options Menu,” describes the use of the primary and alternate switch images, how to load a new software image, and how to reset the software to factory defaults.

Chapter 10, “The Maintenance Menu,” shows how to generate and access a dump of critical switch state information, how to clear it, and how to clear part or all of the forwarding database.

Appendix A, “Web OS Syslog Messages,” shows a listing of syslog messages.

Appendix B, “Web OS SNMP Agent,” lists the Management Interface Bases (MIBs) supported in the switch software.

“Glossary” includes definitions of terminology used throughout the book.

Typographic Conventions

The following table describes the typographic styles used in this book.

Table 1 Typographic Conventions

Typeface or Symbol	Meaning	Example
AaBbCc123	This type is used for names of commands, files, and directories used within the text. It also depicts on-screen computer output and prompts.	View the <code>readme.txt</code> file. <code>Main#</code>
AaBbCc123	This bold type appears in command examples. It shows text that must be typed in exactly as shown.	<code>Main# sys</code>
<AaBbCc123>	This italicized type appears in command examples as a parameter placeholder. Replace the indicated text with the appropriate real name or value when using the command. Do not type the brackets. This also shows book titles, special terms, or words to be emphasized.	To establish a Telnet session, enter: <code>host# telnet <IP address></code> Read your <i>User's Guide</i> thoroughly.
[]	Command items shown inside brackets are optional and can be used or excluded as the situation demands. Do not type the brackets.	<code>host# ls [-a]</code>

Contacting Alteon WebSystems

Use the following information to access Alteon WebSystems support and sales.

- URL for Alteon WebSystems Online:

<http://www.alteonwebsystems.com>

This Website includes product information, software updates, release notes, and white papers. The Website also includes access to Alteon WebSystems Customer Support for accounts that are under warranty or covered by a maintenance contract.

- E-mail access:

support@alteon.com

E-mail access to Alteon WebSystems Customer Support is available to accounts that are under warranty or covered by a maintenance contract.

- Telephone access to Alteon WebSystems Customer Support:

1-888-Alteon0 (or 1-888-258-3660)
1-408-360-5695

Telephone access to Alteon WebSystems Customer Support is available to accounts that are under warranty or covered by a maintenance contract. Normal business hours are 8 a.m. to 6 p.m. Pacific Standard Time.

- Telephone access to Alteon WebSystems Sales:

1-888-Alteon2 (or 1-888-258-3662), and press 2 for Sales
1-408-360-5600, and press 2 for Sales

Telephone access is available for information regarding product sales and upgrades.



CHAPTER 1

The Command Line Interface

Your Alteon Web switch is ready to perform basic switching functions right out of the box. Some of the more advanced features, however, require some administrative configuration before they can be used effectively.

The extensive Web OS switching software included in your switch provides a variety of options for accessing and configuring the switch:

- A built-in, text-based command line interface and menu system for access via local terminal or remote Telnet session
- A Web-based management interface for interactive network access through your Web browser
- SNMP support for access through network management software such as HP-OpenView

The command line interface is the most direct method for collecting switch information and performing switch configuration. Using a basic terminal, you are presented with a hierarchy of menus that enable you to view information and statistics about the switch, and to perform any necessary configuration.

This chapter explains how to access the Command Line Interface (CLI) to the switch.

Connecting to the Switch

You can access the command line interface in two ways:

- Using a console connection via the console port
- Using a Telnet connection over the network
- Using a SSH connection to securely log into another computer over a network

Establishing a Console Connection

Requirements

To establish a console connection with the switch, you will need the following:

- An ASCII terminal or a computer running terminal emulation software set to the parameters shown in the table below:

Table 1-1 Console Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Value
Baud Rate	9600
Data Bits	8
Parity	None
Stop Bits	1
Flow Control	None

- A standard serial cable with a male DB9 connector (see your switch hardware installation guide for specifics).

Procedure

1. **Connect the terminal to the Console port using the serial cable.**
2. **Power on the terminal.**
3. **To establish the connection, press <Enter> a few times on your terminal.**

You will next be required to enter a password for access to the switch. (For more information, see [“Setting Passwords” on page 36](#)).

Establishing a Telnet Connection

A Telnet connection offers the convenience of accessing the switch from any workstation connected to the network. Telnet access provides the same options for user access and administrator access as those available through the console port.

To configure the switch for Telnet access, you need to have a device with Telnet software located on the same network as the switch. The switch must have an IP address. The switch can get its IP address in one of two ways:

- Dynamically, from a BOOTP server on your network
- Manually, when you configure the switch IP address (see [“Setup Part 1: Basic System Configuration” on page 25](#)).

Using a BOOTP Server

By default, the Web OS software is set up to request its IP address from a BOOTP server. If you have a BOOTP server on your network, add the MAC address of the switch to the BOOTP configuration file located on the BOOTP server. The MAC address can be found on a small white label on the back panel of the switch. The MAC address can also be found in the System Information menu (see [“System Information” on page 61](#)).

Running Telnet

Once the IP parameters on the Web switch are configured, you can access the CLI using a Telnet connection. To establish a Telnet connection with the switch, run the Telnet program on your workstation and issue the Telnet command, followed by the switch IP address:

```
telnet <IP address>
```

You will then be prompted to enter a password as explained on [page 17](#).

Establishing an SSH Connection

Although a remote network administrator can manage the configuration of an Alteon Web switch via Telnet, this method does not provide a secure connection. The SSH (Secure Shell) protocol enables you to securely log into another computer over a network to execute commands remotely. As a secure alternative to using Telnet to manage switch configuration, SSH ensures that all data sent over the network is encrypted and secure.

The switch can do only one session of key/cipher generation at a time. Thus, a SSH/SCP client will not be able to login if the switch is doing key generation at that time or if another client has just logged in before this client. Similarly, the system will fail to do the key generation if a SSH/SCP client is logging in at that time.

The supported SSH encryption and authentication methods are listed below.

- Server Host Authentication: Client RSA-authenticates the switch in the beginning of every connection.
- Key Exchange: RSA
- Encryption: 3DES-CBC, DES
- User Authentication: Local password authentication, Radius

The following SSH clients have been tested:

- SSH 1.2.23 and SSH 1.2.27 for Linux (freeware)
- SecureCRT 3.0.2 and SecureCRT 3.0.3 (Van Dyke Technologies, Inc.)
- F-Secure SSH 1.1 for Windows (Data Fellows)

NOTE – The Web OS implementation of SSH is based on SSH version 1.5 and supports SSH-1.5-1.X.XX. SSH clients of other versions (especially Version 2) will not be supported.

Running SSH

Once the IP parameters are configured and the SSH service is turned on the Web switch, you can access the command line interface using an SSH connection.

To establish an SSH connection with the switch, run the SSH program on your workstation by issuing the SSH command, followed by the switch IP address:

```
>> # ssh <switch IP address>
```

or, if SecurID authentication is required, use the following command:

```
>> # ssh -1 ace <switch IP address>
```

You will then be prompted to enter your user name and password.

Accessing the Switch

To enable better switch management and user accountability, seven levels or *classes* of user access have been implemented on the Web switch. Levels of access to CLI and Web management functions and screens increase as needed to perform various switch management tasks. Conceptually, access classes are defined as follows:

- User interaction with the switch is completely passive—nothing can be changed on the Web switch. Users may display information that has no security or privacy implications, such as switch statistics and current operational state information.
- Operators can only effect temporary changes on the Web switch. These changes will be lost when the switch is rebooted/reset. Operators have access to the switch management features used for daily switch operations. Because any changes an operator makes are undone by a reset of the switch, operators cannot severely impact switch operation.
- Administrators are the only ones that may make permanent changes to the switch configuration—changes that are persistent across a reboot/reset of the switch. Administrators can access switch functions to configure and troubleshoot problems on the Web switch. Because administrators can also make temporary (operator-level) changes as well, they must be aware of the interactions between temporary and permanent changes.

Access to switch functions is controlled through the use of unique surnames and passwords. Once you are connected to the switch via local console, Telnet, or SSH, you are prompted to enter a password. The default user names/password for each access level are listed in the following table.

NOTE – It is recommended that you change default switch passwords after initial configuration and as regularly as required under your network security policies. For more information, see [“Setting Passwords” on page 36](#).

Table 1-2 User Access Levels

User Account	Description and Tasks Performed	Password
User	The User has no direct responsibility for switch management. He or she can view all switch status information and statistics, but cannot make any configuration changes to the switch.	user

Table 1-2 User Access Levels

User Account	Description and Tasks Performed	Password
SLB Operator	The SLB Operator manages Web servers and other Internet services and their loads. In addition to being able to view all switch information and statistics, the SLB Operator can enable/disable servers using the Server Load Balancing operation menu.	slboper
Layer 4 Operator	The Layer 4 Operator manages traffic on the lines leading to the shared Internet services. This user currently has the same access level as the SLB operator. and the access level is reserved for future use, to provide access to operational commands for operators managing traffic on the line leading to the shared Internet services.	l4oper
Operator	The Operator manages all functions of the switch. In addition to SLB Operator functions, the Operator can reset ports or the entire switch.	oper
SLB Administrator	The SLB Administrator configures and manages Web servers and other Internet services and their loads. In addition to SLB Operator functions, the SLB Administrator can configure parameters on the Server Load Balancing menus, with the exception of not being able to configure filters or bandwidth management.	slbadmin
Layer 4 Administrator	The Layer 4 Administrator configures and manages traffic on the lines leading to the shared Internet services. In addition to SLB Administrator functions, the Layer 4 Administrator can configure all parameters on the Server Load Balancing menus, including filters and bandwidth management.	l4admin
Administrator	The superuser Administrator has complete access to all menus, information, and configuration commands on the Web switch, including the ability to change both the user and administrator passwords.	admin

NOTE – With the exception of the “admin” user, access to each user level can be disabled by setting the password to an empty value. All user levels below “admin” will (by default) be initially disabled (empty password) until they are enabled by the “admin” user. This is done in order to avoid inadvertently leaving the switch open to unauthorized users.

CLI Versus Setup

Once the administrator password is verified, you are given complete access to the switch. If the switch is still set to its factory default configuration, the system will ask whether you wish to run Setup (see [Chapter 2, “First-Time Configuration”](#)), a utility designed to help you through the first-time configuration process. If the switch has already been configured, the Main Menu of the CLI instead.

The following figure shows the Main Menu with administrator privileges.

```
[Main Menu]
  info      - Information Menu
  stats     - Statistics Menu
  cfg       - Configuration Menu
  oper      - Operations Command Menu
  boot      - Boot Options Menu
  maint     - Maintenance Menu
  diff      - Show pending config changes [global command]
  apply     - Apply pending config changes [global command]
  save      - Save updated config to FLASH [global command]
  revert    - Revert pending or applied changes [global command]
  exit      - Exit [global command, always available]
```

Figure 1 Administrator Main Menu

NOTE – If you are accessing a user account or Layer 4 administrator account, some menu options will not be available.

Command Line History and Editing

For a description of global commands, shortcuts, and command line editing functions, see [Chapter 3, “Menu Basics.”](#)

Idle Timeout

By default, the switch will disconnect your console or Telnet session after five minutes of inactivity. This function is controlled by the idle timeout parameter, which can be set from 1 to 60 minutes. For information on changing this parameter, see “System Configuration” on [page 120](#).



CHAPTER 2

First-Time Configuration

To help with the initial process of configuring your switch, the Web OS software includes a Setup utility. The Setup utility prompts you step-by-step to enter all the necessary information for basic configuration of the switch. This chapter describes how to use the Setup utility and how to change system passwords.

Using the Setup Utility

Whenever you log in as the system administrator under the factory default configuration, you are asked whether you wish to run the Setup utility. Setup can also be activated manually from the command line interface any time after login.

Information Needed For Setup

Setup requests the following information:

- Basic system information
 - ☐ Date & time
 - ☐ Whether to use BOOTP or not
 - ☐ Whether to use Spanning Tree Protocol or not
- Optional configuration for each port
 - ☐ Speed, duplex, flow control, and negotiation mode (as appropriate)
 - ☐ Whether to use VLAN tagging or not (as appropriate)
- Optional configuration for each VLAN
 - ☐ Name of VLAN
 - ☐ Whether the VLAN uses Jumbo Frames or not
 - ☐ Which ports are included in the VLAN

- Optional configuration of IP parameters
 - IP address, subnet mask, and broadcast address, and VLAN for each IP interface
 - IP addresses for up to four default gateways
 - Destination, subnet mask, and gateway IP address for each IP static route
 - Whether IP forwarding is enabled or not
 - Whether the RIP supply is enabled or not

Starting Setup When You Log In

The Setup prompt appears automatically whenever you login as the system administrator under the factory default settings.

1. Connect to the switch console.

After connecting, the login prompt will appear as shown below.

```
Enter Password:
```

2. Enter `admin` as the default administrator password.

If the factory default configuration is detected, the system prompts:

```
Connected to Alteon ACEdirector 4
18:44:05 Wed Jan 3, 2001

The switch is booted with factory default configuration.
To ease the configuration of the switch, a "Set Up" facility which
will prompt you with those configuration items that are essential to
the operation of the switch is provided.
Would you like to run "Set Up" to configure the switch? [y/n]:
```

NOTE – If the default `admin` login is unsuccessful, or if the administrator Main Menu appears instead, the system configuration has probably been changed from the factory default settings. If you are certain that you need to return the switch to its factory default settings, see [“Selecting a Configuration Block” on page 251](#).

3. Enter `y` to begin the initial configuration of the switch, or `n` to bypass the Setup facility.

Stopping and Restarting Setup Manually

Stopping Setup

To abort the Setup utility, press <Ctrl-C> during any Setup question. When you abort Setup, the system will prompt:

```
Would you like to run from top again? [y/n]
```

Enter **n** to abort Setup, or **y** to restart the Setup program at the beginning.

Restarting Setup

You can restart the Setup utility manually at any time by entering the following command at the administrator prompt:

```
# /cfg/setup
```

Setup Part 1: Basic System Configuration

When Setup is started, the system prompts:

```
"Set Up" will walk you through the configuration of
System Date and Time, BOOTP, Spanning Tree, Port Speed/Mode,
VLANs, and IP interfaces. [type Ctrl-C to abort "Set Up"]
-----
Will you be configuring VLANs? [y/n]
```

- 1. Enter y if you will be configuring VLANs. Otherwise enter n.**

If you decide not to configure VLANs during this session, you can configure them later using the configuration menus, or by restarting the Setup facility. For more information on configuring VLANs, see the *Web OS 9.0 Application Guide*.

Next, the Setup utility prompts you to input basic system information.

- 2. Enter the month of the current system date at the prompt:**

```
System Date:
Enter month [1]:
```

Enter the month as a number from 1 to 12. To keep the current month, press <Enter>.

3. Enter the day of the current date at the prompt:

Enter day [3]:

Enter the date as a number from 1 to 31. To keep the current day, press <Enter>.

4. Enter the year of the current date at the prompt:

Enter year [2001]:

Enter the last two digits of the year as a number from 00 to 99. "00" is considered 2000. To keep the current year, press <Enter>.

The system displays the date and time settings:

System clock set to 18:55:36 Wed Jan 3, 2001.

5. Enter the hour of the current system time at the prompt:

System Time:
Enter hour in 24-hour format [18]:

Enter the hour as a number from 00 to 23. To keep the current hour, press <Enter>.

6. Enter the minute of the current time at the prompt:

Enter minutes [55]:

Enter the minute as a number from 00 to 59. To keep the current minute, press <Enter>.

7. Enter the seconds of the current time at the prompt:

Enter seconds [37]:

Enter the seconds as a number from 00 to 59. To keep the current second, press <Enter>.

The system displays the date and time settings:

System clock set to 8:55:36 Wed Jan 3, 2001.

8. Enable or disable the use of BOOTP at the prompt:

```
BootP Option:
Current BOOTP usage:          disabled
Enter new BOOTP usage [d/e]:
```

If available on your network, a BOOTP server can supply the switch with IP parameters so that you do not have to enter them manually. BOOTP must be disabled however, before the system will prompt for IP parameters.

Enter **d** to disable the use of BOOTP, or enter **e** to enable the use of BOOTP. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

9. Turn Spanning Tree Protocol on or off at the prompt:

```
Spanning Tree:
Current Spanning Tree setting: ON
Turn Spanning Tree OFF? [y/n]
```

Enter **y** to turn off Spanning Tree, or enter **n** to leave Spanning Tree on.

Setup Part 2: Port Configuration

NOTE – The port configuration options shown in these steps are for the ACEswitch 180e. When configuring port options for other switches, some of the prompts and options may be different.

1. Select the port to configure, or skip port configuration at the prompt:

```
Port Config:
Enter port number: (1-9)
```

If you wish to change settings for individual ports, enter the number of the port you wish to configure. To skip port configuration, press <Enter> without specifying any port and go to [“Setup Part 3: VLANs” on page 30](#).

2. If appropriate, configure Ethernet/Fast Ethernet port speed.

If you selected a port that has an Ethernet/Fast Ethernet connector, the system prompts:

```
Fast Link Configuration:
Port Speed:
Current Port 1 speed setting: 10/100
Enter new speed ["10"/"100"/"any"]:
```

Enter the port speed from the options available, or enter **any** to have the switch auto-sense the port speed. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

3. If appropriate, configure Ethernet/Fast Ethernet port duplex mode.

If you selected a port that has an Ethernet/Fast Ethernet connector, the system prompts:

```
Port Mode:
Current port 1 mode setting: any
Enter new speed ["full"/"half"/"any"]:
```

Enter **full** for full-duplex, **half** for half-duplex, or **any** to have the switch auto-negotiate. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

4. If appropriate, configure Ethernet/Fast Ethernet port flow control.

If you selected a port that has an Ethernet/Fast Ethernet connector, the system prompts:

```
Port Flow Control:
Current Port 1 flow control setting: both
Enter new value ["rx"/"tx"/"both"/"none"]:
```

Enter **rx** to enable receive flow control, **tx** for transmit flow control, **both** to enable both, or **none** to turn flow control off for the port. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

5. If appropriate, configure Ethernet/Fast Ethernet port autonegotiation mode.

If you selected a port that has an Ethernet/Fast Ethernet connector, the system prompts:

```
Port Auto Negotiation:
Current Port 1 autonegotiation: on
Enter new value ["on"/"off"]:
```

Enter **on** to enable autonegotiation, **off** to disable it, or press <Enter> to keep the current setting.

6. If appropriate, configure Gigabit Ethernet port flow parameters.

If you selected a port that has a Gigabit Ethernet connector, the system prompts:

```
Gig Link Configuration:
Port Flow Control:
Current Port 1 flow control setting:    both
Enter new value ["rx"/"tx"/"both"/"none"]:
```

Enter **rx** to enable receive flow control, **tx** for transmit flow control, **both** to enable both, or **none** to turn flow control off for the port. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

7. If appropriate, configure Gigabit Ethernet port autonegotiation mode.

If you selected a port that has a Gigabit Ethernet connector, the system prompts:

```
Port Auto Negotiation:
Current Port 1 autonegotiation:        on
Enter new value ["on"/"off"]:
```

Enter **on** to enable port autonegotiation, **off** to disable it, or press <Enter> to keep the current setting.

8. If configuring VLANs, enable or disable VLAN tagging for the port.

If you have selected to configure VLANs back in Part 1, the system prompts:

```
Port VLAN tagging config (tagged port can be a member of multiple VLANs)
Current TAG flag:                    disabled
Enter new TAG status [d/e]:
```

Enter **d** to disable VLAN tagging for the port or enter **e** to enable VLAN tagging for the port. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

9. The system prompts you to configure the next port:

```
Enter port number: (1 to 9)
```

When you are through configuring ports, press <Enter> without specifying any port. Otherwise, repeat the steps in this section.

Setup Part 3: VLANs

If you chose to skip VLANs configuration back in Part 1, skip to [“Setup Part 4: IP Configuration” on page 32](#).

1. Select the VLAN to configure, or skip VLAN configuration at the prompt:

```
VLAN Config:  
Enter VLAN number from 2 to 4094, NULL at end:
```

If you wish to change settings for individual VLANs, enter the number of the VLAN you wish to configure. To skip VLAN configuration, press <Enter> without typing a VLAN number and go to [“Setup Part 4: IP Configuration” on page 32](#).

2. Enter the new VLAN name at the prompt:

```
VLAN is newly created.  
Pending new VLAN name: "VLAN 2"  
Enter new VLAN name, without quotes:
```

Entering a new VLAN name is optional. To use the pending new VLAN name, press <Enter>.

3. Enable or disable Jumbo Frame support for the VLAN at the prompt:

```
VLAN Jumbo Frame Support:  
Current Jumbo Frame support:          disabled  
Enter new Jumbo Frame support [d/e]:
```

Enter **d** to disable Jumbo Frame support for the VLAN, or enter **e** to enable Jumbo Frame support for the VLAN. To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

4. Enter the VLAN port numbers.

The system prompts you to define the first port in the VLAN:

```
Define ports in VLAN:  
Current VLAN 2: empty  
Enter port numbers one per line, NULL at end:
```

Type the first port number to add to the current VLAN and press <Enter>. The right angle prompt appears:

```
>
```

For each additional port in the VLAN, type the port number and press <Enter> to move to the next line. Repeat this until all ports for the VLAN being configured are entered. When you are finished adding ports to this VLAN, press <Enter> without specifying any port.

5. The system prompts you to configure the next VLAN:

```
VLAN Config:  
Enter VLAN number from 2 to 4094, NULL at end:
```

Repeat the steps in this section until all VLANs have been configured. When all VLANs have been configured, press <Enter> without specifying any VLAN.

Setup Part 4: IP Configuration

If BOOTP was enabled back in Part 1, skip to [Setup Part 5: Final Steps](#). Otherwise, if you disabled BOOTP, the system prompts for IP parameters.

IP Interfaces

IP interfaces are used for defining subnets to which the switch belongs.

Up to 256 IP interfaces can be configured on the Web switch. The IP address assigned to each IP interface provide the switch with an IP presence on your network. No two IP interfaces can be on the same IP subnet. The interfaces can be used for connecting to the switch for remote configuration, and for routing between subnets and VLANs (if used).

1. **Select the IP interface to configure, or skip interface configuration at the prompt:**

```
IP Config:

IP interfaces:
Enter interface number: (1-256)
```

If you wish to configure individual IP interfaces, enter the number of the IP interface you wish to configure. To skip IP interface configuration, press <Enter> without typing an interface number and go to [“Default Gateways” on page 33](#).

2. **For the specified IP interface, enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation:**

```
Current IP address:      0.0.0.0
Enter new IP address:
```

To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

3. **At the prompt, enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation:**

```
Current subnet mask:      0.0.0.0
Enter new subnet mask:
```

To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

4. At the prompt, enter the broadcast IP address in dotted decimal notation:

```
Current broadcast address:      0.0.0.0
Enter new broadcast address:
```

To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

5. If configuring VLANs, specify a VLAN for the interface.

This prompt appears if you selected to configure VLANs back in Part 1:

```
Current VLAN:      1
Enter new VLAN:
```

Enter the number for the VLAN to which the interface belongs, or press <Enter> without specifying a VLAN number to accept the current setting.

6. At the prompt, enter y to enable the IP interface, or n to leave it disabled:

```
Enable IP interface? [y/n]
```

7. The system prompts you to configure another interface:

```
Enter interface number: (1-256)
```

Repeat the steps in this section until all IP interfaces have been configured. When all interfaces have been configured, press <Enter> without specifying any interface number.

Default Gateways

1. At the prompt, select a default gateway for configuration, or skip default gateway configuration:

```
IP default gateways:
Enter default gateway number: (1-4)
```

Enter the number for the default gateway to be configured. To skip default gateway configuration, press <Enter> without typing a gateway number and go to [“IP Routing” on page 34](#).

2. At the prompt, enter the IP address for the selected default gateway:

```
Current IP address:      0.0.0.0
Enter new IP address:
```

Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation, or press <Enter> without specifying an address to accept the current setting.

3. At the prompt, enter *y* to enable the default gateway, or *n* to leave it disabled:

```
Enable default gateway? [y/n]
```

4. The system prompts you to configure another default gateway:

```
Enter default gateway number: (1-4)
```

Repeat the steps in this section until all default gateways have been configured. When all default gateways have been configured, press <Enter> without specifying any number.

IP Routing

When IP interfaces are configured for the various subnets attached to your switch, IP routing between them can be performed entirely within the switch. This eliminates the need to bounce inter-subnet communication off an external router device. Routing on more complex networks, where subnets may not have a direct presence on the Web switch, can be accomplished through configuring static routes or by letting the switch learn routes dynamically.

This part of the Setup program prompts you to configure the various routing parameters.

1. At the prompt, enable or disable forwarding for IP Routing:

```
Enable IP forwarding? [y/n]
```

Enter **y** to enable IP forwarding. To disable IP forwarding, enter **n** and proceed to [Step 2](#). To keep the current setting, press <Enter>.

2. At the prompt, enable or disable the RIP supply:

```
Enable RIP supply? [y/n]
```

If your network uses Routing Interface Protocol (RIP), enter **y** to enable the RIP supply. Otherwise, enter **n** to disable it. When RIP is enabled, RIP listen is set by default.

Setup Part 5: Final Steps

1. **When prompted, decide whether to restart Setup or continue:**

Would you like to run from top again? [y/n]

Enter **y** to restart the Setup utility from the beginning, or **n** to continue.

2. **When prompted, decide whether you wish to review the configuration changes:**

Review the changes made? [y/n]

Enter **y** to review the changes made during this session of the Setup utility. Enter **n** to continue without reviewing the changes. We recommend that you review the changes.

3. **Next, decide whether to apply the changes at the prompt:**

Apply the changes? [y/n]

Enter **y** to apply the changes, or **n** to continue without applying. Changes are normally applied.

4. **At the prompt, decide whether to make the changes permanent:**

Save changes to flash? [y/n]

Enter **y** to save the changes to flash. Enter **n** to continue without saving the changes. Changes are normally saved at this point.

5. **If you do not apply or save the changes, the system prompts whether to abort them:**

Abort all changes? [y/n]

Enter **y** to discard the changes. Enter **n** to return to the “Apply the changes?” prompt.

NOTE – After initial configuration is complete, it is recommended that you change the default passwords as shown in the following section.

Setting Passwords

It is recommended that you change the user and administrator passwords after initial configuration and as regularly as required under your network security policies.

To change both the user password and the administrator password, you must login using the administrator password. Passwords cannot be modified from the user command mode.

NOTE – If you forget your administrator password, call your technical support representative for help using the password fix-up mode.

Changing the Default Administrator Password

The administrator has complete access to all menus, information, and configuration commands, including the ability to change both the user and administrator passwords.

The default password for the administrator account is `admin`. To change the default password, follow this procedure:

1. **Connect to the switch and log in using the `admin` password.**
2. **From the Main Menu, use the following command to access the Configuration Menu:**

```
Main# cfg
```

The Configuration Menu is displayed.

```
[Configuration Menu]
  sys      - System-wide Parameter Menu
  port     - Port Menu
  ip       - IP Menu
  vlan     - VLAN Menu
  stp      - Spanning Tree Menu
  snmp     - SNMP Menu
  mirr     - Port Mirroring Menu
  slb      - Server Load Balancing Menu
  trunk    - Trunk Group Menu
  vrrp     - Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol Menu
  bwm      - Bandwidth Management Menu
  isd      - Integrated Service Director Menu
  setup    - Step by step configuration set up
  dump     - Dump current configuration to script file
  ptcfg    - Backup current configuration to tftp server
  gtcfg    - Restore current configuration from tftp server
```

3. From the Configuration Menu, use the following command to select the System Menu:

```
>> Configuration# sys
```

The System Menu is displayed.

```
[System Menu]
  syslog - Syslog Menu
  sshd   - SSH Server Menu
  radius - RADIUS Authentication Menu
  ntp    - NTP Server Menu
  date   - Set system date
  time   - Set system time
  idle   - Set timeout for idle CLI sessions
  snmp   - Set SNMP access control
  wport  - Set Web server port number
  bannr  - Set login banner
  mnet   - Set management network
  mmask  - Set management netmask
  smtp   - Set SMTP host
  bootp  - Enable or disable use of BOOTP
  http   - Enable or disable HTTP (Web) access
  user   - User Access Control Menu (passwords)
  cur    - Display current system-wide parameters
```

NOTE – The Browser Based Interface (BBI) command **wport** is not supported on the Alteon AD3 or 180e Web switches.

4. Select the administrator password by entering admpw at the System# prompt.

```
System# /user/admpw
```

5. Enter the current administrator password at the prompt:

```
Changing ADMINISTRATOR password; validation required...
Enter current administrator password:
```

NOTE – If you forget your administrator password, call your technical support representative for help using the password fix-up mode.

6. Enter the new administrator password at the prompt:

```
Enter new administrator password:
```

7. Enter the new administrator password, again, at the prompt:

```
Re-enter new administrator password:
```

8. Apply and save your change by entering the following commands:

```
System# apply  
System# save
```

Changing the Default User Password

The user login has limited control of the switch. Through a user account, you can view switch information and statistics, but you can't make configuration changes.

The default password for the user account is `user`. This password cannot be changed from the user account. Only the administrator has the ability to change passwords, as shown in the following procedure.

1. Connect to the switch and log in using the `admin` password.
2. From the Main Menu, use the following command to access the Configuration Menu:

```
Main# cfg
```

3. From the Configuration Menu, use the following command to select the System Menu:

```
>> Configuration# sys
```

4. Select the user password by entering `usrpw` at the `System#` prompt.

```
System# /user/usrpw
```

5. Enter the current administrator password at the prompt.

Only the administrator can change the user password. Entering the administrator password confirms your authority.

```
Changing USER password; validation required...
Enter current administrator password:
```

6. Enter the new user password at the prompt:

```
Enter new user password:
```

7. Enter the new user password, again, at the prompt:

```
Re-enter new user password:
```

8. Apply and save your changes:

```
System# apply
System# save
```

Changing the Default Layer 4 Administrator Password

The Layer 4 administrator has limited control of the switch. Through a Layer 4 administrator account, you can view all switch information and statistics, but can configure changes only on the Server Load Balancing menus.

The default password for the Layer 4 administrator account is `l4admin`. To change the default password, follow this procedure:

1. Connect to the switch and log in using the administrator account.

To change any switch password, you must login using the administrator password. Passwords cannot be modified from the Layer 4 administrator account or the user account.

2. From the Main Menu, use the following command to access the System Menu:

```
Main# /cfg/sys/user
```

3. Select the Layer 4 administrator password:

```
System# l4apw
```

4. Enter the current *administrator* password (not the Layer 4 administrator password) at the prompt:

```
Changing L4 ADMINISTRATOR password; validation required...  
Enter current administrator password:
```

NOTE – If you forget your administrator password, call your technical support representative for help using the password fix-up mode.

5. Enter the new Layer 4 administrator password at the prompt:

```
Enter new L4 administrator password:
```

6. Enter the new administrator password, again, at the prompt:

```
Re-enter new L4 administrator password:
```

7. Apply and save your change by entering the following commands:

```
System# apply  
System# save
```




CHAPTER 3

Menu Basics

The Web switch's Command Line Interface (CLI) is used for viewing switch information and statistics. In addition, the administrator can use the CLI for performing all levels of switch configuration.

To make the CLI easy to use, the various commands have been logically grouped into a series of menus and sub-menus. Each menu displays a list of commands and/or sub-menus that are available, along with a summary of what each command will do. Below each menu is a prompt where you can enter any command appropriate to the current menu.

This chapter describes the Main Menu commands, and provides a list of commands and short-cuts that are commonly available from all the menus within the CLI.

The Main Menu

The Main Menu appears after a successful connection and login. [Figure 2](#) shows the Main Menu for the administrator login. Some features are not available under the user login.

```
[Main Menu]
info      - Information Menu
stats     - Statistics Menu
cfg       - Configuration Menu
oper      - Operations Command Menu
boot      - Boot Options Menu
maint     - Maintenance Menu
diff      - Show pending config changes [global command]
apply     - Apply pending config changes [global command]
save      - Save updated config to FLASH [global command]
revert    - Revert pending or applied changes [global command]
exit      - Exit [global command, always available]
```

Figure 2 Administrator Main Menu

Menu Summary

■ Information Menu

Provides sub-menus for displaying information about the current status of the switch: from basic system settings to VLANs, Layer 4 settings, and more.

■ Statistics Menu

Provides sub-menus for displaying switch performance statistics. Included are port, IF, IP, ICMP, TCP, UDP, SNMP, routing, ARP, DNS, VRRP, and Layer 4 statistics.

■ Configuration Menu

This menu is available only from an administrator login. It includes sub-menus for configuring every aspect of the switch. Changes to configuration are not active until explicitly applied. Changes can be saved to non-volatile memory.

■ Operations Command Menu

Operations-level commands are used for making immediate and temporary changes to switch configuration. This menu is used for bringing ports temporarily in and out of service, performing port mirroring, and enabling or disabling Server Load Balancing functions. It is also used for activating or deactivating optional software packages.

■ Boot Options Menu

This menu is used for upgrading switch software, selecting configuration blocks, and for resetting the switch when necessary.

■ Maintenance Menu

This menu is used for debugging purposes, enabling you to generate a dump of the critical state information in the switch, and to clear entries in the forwarding database and the ARP and routing tables.

Global Commands

Some basic commands are recognized throughout the menu hierarchy. These commands are useful for obtaining online help, navigating through menus, and for applying and saving configuration changes:

Table 3-1 Global Commands

Command	Action
? <i>command</i>	Provides more information about a specific command on the current menu. When used without the <i>command</i> parameter, a summary of the global commands is displayed.
.	Display the current menu.
..	Go up one level in the menu structure.
/	If placed at the beginning of a command, go to the Main Menu. Otherwise, this is used to separate multiple commands placed on the same line.
diff	Show any pending configuration changes.
apply	Apply pending configuration changes.
save	Write configuration changes to non-volatile flash memory.
revert	Remove pending configuration changes between “apply” commands. Use this command to restore configuration parameters set since last “apply” command.
exit	Exit from the command line interface and log out.
ping	Use this command to verify station-to-station connectivity across the network. The format is as follows: ping <i>address</i> [<i>tries</i> [<i>delay</i>]] Where <i>address</i> is the hostname or IP address of the device, <i>tries</i> (optional) is the number of attempts (1-32), and <i>delay</i> (optional) is the number of milliseconds between attempts. The DNS parameters must be configured if specifying hostnames (see “Domain Name System Configuration” on page 147).
traceroute	Use this command to identify the route used for station-to-station connectivity across the network. The format is as follows: traceroute <i>address</i> [<i>max-hops</i> [<i>delay</i>]] Where <i>address</i> is the hostname or IP address of the target station, <i>max-hops</i> (optional) is the maximum distance to trace (1-16 devices), and <i>delay</i> (optional) is the number of milliseconds for wait for the response. As with ping , the DNS parameters must be configured if specifying hostnames.
pwd	Display the command path used to reach the current menu.

Table 3-1 Global Commands

Command	Action
lines <i>n</i>	Set the number of lines (<i>n</i>) that display on the screen at one time. The default is 24 lines. When used without a value, the current setting is displayed.
verbose <i>n</i>	Sets the level of information displayed on the screen: 0 =Quiet: Nothing appears except errors—not even prompts. 1 =Normal: Prompts and requested output are shown, but no menus. 2 =Verbose: Everything is shown. When used without a value, the current setting is displayed.

Command Line History and Editing

Using the command line interface, you can retrieve and modify previously entered commands with just a few keystrokes. The following options are available globally at the command line:

Table 3-2 Command Line History and Editing Options

Option	Description
history	Display a numbered list of the last 10 previously entered commands.
!!	Repeat the last entered command.
!<i>n</i>	Repeat the <i>n</i> th command shown on the history list.
<Ctrl-p>	(Also the up arrow key.) Recall the <i>previous</i> command from the history list. This can be used multiple times to work backward through the last 10 commands. The recalled command can be entered as is, or edited using the options below.
<Ctrl-n>	(Also the down arrow key.) Recall the <i>next</i> command from the history list. This can be used multiple times to work forward through the last 10 commands. The recalled command can be entered as is, or edited using the options below.
<Ctrl-a>	Move the cursor to the beginning of command line.
<Ctrl-e>	Move cursor to the <i>end</i> of the command line.
<Ctrl-b>	(Also the left arrow key.) Move the cursor <i>back</i> one position to the left.
<Ctrl-f>	(Also the right arrow key.) Move the cursor <i>forward</i> one position to the right.
<Backspace>	(Also the Delete key.) Erase one character to the left of the cursor position.
<Ctrl-d>	<i>Delete</i> one character at the cursor position.
<Ctrl-k>	<i>Kill</i> (erase) all characters from the cursor position to the end of the command line.
<Ctrl-l>	Redraw the screen.
<Ctrl-u>	Clear the entire line.
Other keys	Insert new characters at the cursor position.

Command Line Interface Shortcuts

Command Stacking

As a shortcut, you can type multiple commands on a single line, separated by forward slashes (/). You can connect as many commands as required to access the menu option that you want. For example, the keyboard shortcut to access the Spanning Tree Port Configuration Menu from the `Main#` prompt is as follows:

```
Main# cfg/stp/port
```

Command Abbreviation

Most commands can be abbreviated by entering the first characters which distinguish the command from the others in the same menu or sub-menu. For example, the command shown above could also be entered as follows:

```
Main# c/st/p
```

Tab Completion

By entering the first letter of a command at any menu prompt and hitting <Tab>, the CLI will display all commands or options in that menu that begin with that letter. Entering additional letters will further refine the list of commands or options displayed. If only one command fits the input text when <Tab> is pressed, that command will be supplied on the command line, waiting to be entered. If the <Tab> key is pressed without any input on the command line, the currently active menu will be displayed.



CHAPTER 4

The Information Menu

You can view configuration information for the switch in both the user and administrator command modes. This chapter discusses how to use the command line interface to display switch information.

/info

Information Menu

```
[Information Menu]
slb      - Layer 4 Information Menu
route    - IP Routing Information Menu
arp      - ARP Information Menu
fdb      - Forwarding Database Information Menu
sys      - Show system information
log      - Show last 10 syslog messages
link     - Show link status
stp      - Show STP information
vlan     - Show VLAN information
port     - Show port information
ip       - Show IP information
vrrp     - Show Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol information
trunk    - Show Trunk Group information
bwm      - Show Bandwidth Management information
isd      - Show isd server information
swkey    - Show enabled software features
clrlog   - Clear syslog messages
dump     - Dump all information
```

The information provided by each menu option is briefly described in [Table 4-1 on page 48](#), with pointers to where detailed information can be found.

Table 4-1 Information Menu Options (/info)

Command Syntax and Usage

slb

Displays the Layer 4 Information Menu. For details, see [page 51](#).

route

Displays the IP Routing Menu. Using the options of this menu, the system displays the following for each configured or learned route:

- Route destination IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address
- Type of route
- Tag indicating origin of route
- Metric for RIP tagged routes, specifying the number of hops to the destination (1-15 hops, or 16 for infinite hops)
- The IP interface that the route uses

For details, see [page 54](#).

arp

Displays the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) Information Menu. For details, see [page 57](#).

fdb

Displays the Forwarding Database Information Menu. For details, see [page 59](#).

sys

Displays system information, including:

- System date and time
- Switch model name and number
- Switch name and location
- Time of last boot
- MAC address of the switch management processor
- IP address of IP interface #1
- Hardware version and part number
- Software image file and version number
- Configuration name
- Log-in banner, if one is configured

For details, see [page 61](#).

log

Displays 10 most recent syslog messages. For details, see [page 62](#).

Table 4-1 Information Menu Options (/info)

Command Syntax and Usage

link

Displays configuration information about each port, including:

- Port number
- Port speed (10, 100, 10/100, or 1000)
- Duplex mode (half, full, or auto)
- Flow control for transmit and receive (no, yes, or auto)
- Link status (up or down)

For details, see [page 63](#).

stp

In addition to seeing if STP is enabled or disabled, you can view the following STP bridge information:

- Priority
- Hello interval
- Maximum age value
- Forwarding delay
- Aging time

You can also see the following port-specific STP information:

- Port number and priority
- Cost
- State

For details, see [page 64](#).

vlan

Displays VLAN configuration information, including:

- VLAN Number
- VLAN Name
- Status
- Jumbo Frame usage
- Port membership of the VLAN

For details, see [page 66](#).

port

Displays port status information, including:

- Port number
- Whether the port uses VLAN Tagging or not
- Port VLAN ID (PVID)
- Port name
- VLAN membership

For details, see [page 67](#).

Table 4-1 Information Menu Options (/info)

Command Syntax and Usage

ip

Displays IP Information. For details, see [page 68](#).

IP information, includes:

- IP interface information: Interface number, IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, VLAN number, and operational status.
 - Default gateway information: Metric for selecting which configured gateway to use, gateway number, IP address, and health status
 - IP forwarding information: Enable status, `lnet` and `lmask`
 - Port status
-

vrrp

Displays the VRRP Information Menu. For details, see [page 69](#).

trunk

When trunk groups are configured, you can view the state of each port in the various trunk groups. For details, see [page 70](#).

bwm

Shows bandwidth management information. For details, see [page 70](#).

isd

Shows information for the Integrated Service Director-SSL Offload (iSD100-SSL) device. No information will be displayed unless you have an iSD100-SSL configured and physically attached to your switch. For details, see [page 71](#).

swkey

Displays a list of all the optional software packages which have been activated or installed on your switch. For details see [page 73](#)

clrlog

Clears syslog messages displayed with `/info/log`.

dump

Dumps all switch information available from the Information Menu (10K or more, depending on your configuration).

If you want to capture dump data to a file, set your communication software on your workstation to capture session data prior to issuing the dump commands.

/info/slb

SLB Information

[Server Load Balancing Information Menu]

sess

- Session Table Information Menu

real

- Show real server information

virt

- Show virtual server information

filt

- Show redirect filter information

port

- Show port information

gslb

- Show GSLB information

haship

- Show real server selected by hash metric

dump

- Show all layer 4 information

Layer 4 information includes the following:

Table 4-2 Layer 4 Information Menu Options (/info/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage

sess

Displays the Session Table Information Menu. To view menu options, see [page 52](#).

real <real server number (1-255)>

Real server number, real IP address, MAC address, VLAN, physical switch port, layer where health check is performed, and health check result.

virt <virtual server number (1-256)>

- Displays Virtual Server State: Virtual server number, IP address, virtual MAC address
- Virtual Port State: Virtual service or port, server port mapping, real server group, group backup server.

filt <filter ID (1-224)>

Displays the filter number, destination port, real server port, real server group, health check layer, group backup server, URL for health checks, and real server group, IP address, backup server, and status.

port <port number (1-9)>

Displays the physical port number, proxy IP address, filter status, a list of applied filters, and client and/or server Layer 4 activity.

gslb

Displays the remote switch number, IP address, IP subnet mask, and health status.

haship <IP address 1> <IP address 2>

Shows real server selected by hash metric. Use IP address 2 if the IDSLB hash metric parameter under **/cfg/slb/filt #/adv** is set to *both*.

Table 4-2 Layer 4 Information Menu Options (/info/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage	
dump	Displays all Layer 4 information for the switch. For details, see page 53 .

/info/slb/sess

Show Session Table Information

[Session Table Information Menu]	
find	- Show all session entries with source IP address
port	- Show all session entries on port
dump	- Show all session entries

Table 4-3 Session Information Menu Options (/info/slb/sess)

Command Syntax and Usage	
find <i><IP address></i>	Displays all session entries with source IP address.
port <i><port number (1-9)></i>	Displays all session entries on port.
dump	Displays all session entries. Information similiar to the following may appear in a session entry dump: <pre>4,5: 3.3.3.8 4579, 0.0.0.6 80 -> 6.6.6.5 80 age 10 E 4,16: 3.3.3.8 2260, 2.2.2.11 80 -> 6.6.6.5 80 age 10 E 9,3: 61.5.193.97 1, 0.0.0.0 1 ALLOW age 8 EPS 4,44: 3.3.3.8 4885, 3.3.3.11 80 -> 0.0.0.0 80 age 0 U 4,46: 3.3.3.8 4886, 3.3.3.11 80 -> 0.0.0.0 80 age 0 U</pre> The codes E, P, and U at the end of the session entries stand for: E = established P = persistent U = pass UP for L7 processing S = special session, such as passive cookie or SSL

/info/slb/dump

Show All Layer 4 Information

```

Real server state:
  1: 210.1.2.200, 00:01:02:c1:4b:48, vlan 1, port 1, health 3, up
  2: 210.1.2.1, 00:01:02:70:4d:4a, vlan 1, port 8, health 3, up
 26: 20.20.20.102, 00:03:47:07:a4:9e, vlan 1, port 6, health 3, up
 27: 20.20.20.101, 00:01:02:71:9c:a6, vlan 1, port 7, health 3, up

Virtual server state:
  1: 20.20.20.200, 00:60:cf:47:5c:1e
    virtual ports:
      http: rport http, group 88, backup none, dbind
      HTTP Application: urlslb
      real servers:
        26: 20.20.20.102, backup none, 2 ms, up
            exclusionary string matching: disabled
            1: any
            2: urlone
        27: 20.20.20.101, backup none, 1 ms, up
            exclusionary string matching: disabled
            3: urltwo
            4: urlthree

Redirect filter state:
 200: group 1, health 3, backup none
      proxy enabled, radius snoop disabled
      real servers:
        1: 210.1.2.200, backup none, 3 ms, up
        2: 210.1.2.1, backup none, 2 ms, up

Port state:
  1: 0.0.0.0
      filt disabled, filters: 80
  2: 0.0.0.0, idslb
      filt enabled, filters: 200
  3: 0.0.0.0, idslb
      filt enabled, filters: 200
  4: 0.0.0.0
      filt disabled, filters: 50 200

```

/info/route

IP Routing Information

[IP Routing Menu]	
find	- Show a single route by destination IP address
gw	- Show routes to a single gateway
type	- Show routes of a single type
tag	- Show routes of a single tag
if	- Show routes on a single interface
dump	- Show all routes

Using the commands listed below, you can display all or a portion of the IP routes currently held in the switch.

Table 4-4 Route Information Menu Options (/info/route)

Command Syntax and Usage

find <IP address>
Displays a single route by destination IP address.
gw <default gateway address>
Displays routes to a single gateway.
type indirect direct local broadcast martian multicast
Displays routes of a single type. For a description of IP routing types, see Table 4-5 on page 55 .
tag fixed static snmp addr rip icmp broadcast martian multicast vip bgp
Displays routes of a single tag. For a description of IP routing types, see Table 4-6 on page 56 .
if <interface number (1-256)>
Displays routes on a single interface.
dump
Displays all routes configured in the switch. For more information, see page 55 .

/info/route/dump

Show All IP Route Information

Destination	Mask	Gateway	Type	Tag	Metr	If
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	2	1
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	static		1
127.0.0.0	255.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	martian	martian		
172.17.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	2	1
172.19.1.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.201	direct	fixed		1
172.19.1.201	255.255.255.255	172.19.1.201	local	addr		1
172.19.1.255	255.255.255.255	172.19.1.255	broadcast	broadcast		1
172.20.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	2	1
172.23.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
172.25.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	4	1
172.26.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
172.27.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	5	1
172.28.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
172.30.0.0	255.255.0.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
205.178.13.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	2	1
205.178.15.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
205.178.16.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
205.178.17.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	3	1
205.178.18.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	2	1
208.214.245.0	255.255.255.0	172.19.1.1	indirect	rip	5	1
224.0.0.0	224.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	martian	martian		

The following table describes the **Type** parameters.

Table 4-5 IP Routing Type Parameters

Parameter	Description
indirect	The next hop to the host or subnet destination will be forwarded through a router at the Gateway address.
direct	Packets will be delivered to a destination host or subnet attached to the switch.
local	Indicates a route to one of the switch's IP interfaces.
broadcast	Indicates a broadcast route.
martian	The destination belongs to a host or subnet which is filtered out. Packets to this destination are discarded.
multicast	Indicates a multicast route.

The following table describes the **Tag** parameters.

Table 4-6 IP Routing Tag Parameters

Parameter	Description
fixed	The address belongs to a host or subnet attached to the switch.
static	The address is a static route which has been configured on the Web switch.
icmp	The address was learned via ICMP.
snmp	This address was configured through SNMP.
addr	The address belongs to one of the switch's IP interfaces.
rip	The address was learned by the Routing Information Protocol (RIP).
broadcast	Indicates a broadcast address.
martian	The address belongs to a filtered group.
multicast	Indicates a multicast address.
vip	Indicates a route destination that is a virtual server IP address. VIP routes are needed to advertise virtual server IP addresses via BGP.
bgp	The address was learned via Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)

/info/arp

ARP Information

[Address Resolution Protocol Menu]	
find	- Show a single ARP entry by IP address
port	- Show ARP entries on a single port
vlan	- Show ARP entries on a single VLAN
refpt	- Show ARP entries referenced by a single port
dump	- Show all ARP entries
addr	- Show ARP address list

The ARP information includes IP address and MAC address of each entry, address status flags (see [Table 4-8 on page 58](#)), VLAN and port for the address, and port referencing information.

Table 4-7 ARP Information Menu Options (/info/arp)

Command Syntax and Usage

- find** *<IP address>*
Displays a single ARP entry by IP address.
-
- port** *<port number (1-9)>*
Displays the ARP entries on a single port.
-
- vlan** *<VLAN number (1-4094)>*
Displays the ARP entries on a single VLAN.
-
- refpt** *<port number (1-9)>*
Displays the ARP entries referenced by a single port.
-

- dump**
Displays all ARP entries. including:
- IP address and MAC address of each entry
 - Address status flag (see below)
 - The VLAN and port to which the address belongs
 - The ports which have referenced the address (empty if no port has routed traffic to the IP address shown)
- For more information, see [page 58](#).
-

- addr**
Displays the ARP address list: IP address, IP mask, MAC address, and VLAN flags.
-

/info/arp/dump

Show All ARP Entry Information

IP address	Flags	MAC address	VLAN	Port	Referenced ports
10.10.10.10	P 4	00:60:cf:40:78:ce	1		1-9
172.19.1.1		00:60:cf:42:e4:40	1	8	empty
172.19.1.61		00:10:a4:f0:4c:13	1	8	empty
172.19.1.201	P	00:60:cf:40:78:c0	1		1-9

The Flag field is interpreted as follows:

Table 4-8 ARP Dump Flag Parameters

Flag	Description
P	Permanent entry created for switch IP interface.
P 4	Permanent entry created for Layer 4 proxy IP address or virtual server IP address.
R	Indirect route entry.
U	Unresolved ARP entry. The MAC address has not been learned.

/info/arp/addr

ARP Address List Information

IP address	IP mask	MAC address	VLAN	Flags
205.178.18.66	255.255.255.255	00:70:cf:03:20:04		P
205.178.50.1	255.255.255.255	00:70:cf:03:20:06	1	
205.178.18.64	255.255.255.255	00:70:cf:03:20:05	1	

/info/fdb

FDB Information

[Forwarding Database Menu]	
find	- Show a single FDB entry by MAC address
port	- Show FDB entries on a single port
vlan	- Show FDB entries on a single VLAN
refpt	- Show FDB entries referenced by a single port
dump	- Show all FDB entries

The forwarding database (FDB) contains information that maps the media access control (MAC) address of each known device to the switch port where the device address was learned. The FDB also shows which other ports have seen frames destined for a particular MAC address.

NOTE – The master forwarding database supports up to 8192 MAC address entries per switch. Each switch port supports up to 4096 entries.

Table 4-9 FDB Information Menu Options (/info/fdb)

Command Syntax and Usage

find <MAC address> [<VLAN>]
Displays a single database entry by its MAC address. You are prompted to enter the MAC address of the device. Enter the MAC address using the format, xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx. For example, 08:00:20:12:34:56. You can also enter the MAC address using the format, xxxxxxxxxxxx. For example, 080020123456.
port <port number (1-9)>
Displays all FDB entries for a particular port.
vlan <VLAN number (1-4094)>
Displays all FDB entries on a single VLAN.
refpt <port number (1-9)>
Displays the FDB entries referenced by a single port.
dump
Displays all entries in the Forwarding Database. For more information, see page 60 .

/info/fdb/dump

Show All FDB Information

MAC Address	VLAN	Port	State	Referenced ports...
00:a0:24:76:be:90	1	1	FWD	1 4
08:00:20:0a:a7:7f	1	2	FWD	2 3
08:00:20:73:b6:29	1	1	FWD	1 2
08:00:20:82:4d:8d	1	3	FWD	3 4
08:00:20:8a:54:2b	1		UNK	1

An address that is in the forwarding (FWD) state, means that it has been learned by the switch. When in the trunking (TRK) state, the port field represents the trunk group number. If the state for the port is listed as unknown (UNK), the MAC address has not yet been learned by the switch, but has only been seen as a destination address. When an address is in the unknown state, no outbound port is indicated, although ports which reference the address as a destination will be listed under “Reference ports.”

If the state for the port is listed as an interface (IF), the MAC address is for a standard VRRP virtual router. If the state is listed as a virtual server (VIP), the MAC address is for a virtual server router—a virtual router with the same IP address as a virtual server.

Clearing Entries from the Forwarding Database

To delete a MAC address from the forwarding database (FDB) or to clear the entire FDB, refer to [page 255](#).

/info/sys

System Information

```
System Information at  9:33:55 Thu May 24, 2001

ACEdirector 4
sysName:
sysLocation:

Switch is up 0 days, 18 hours, 40 minutes and 43 seconds.
Last boot: 14:53:11 Wed May 23, 2001 (reset from Telnet)

MAC address: 00:60:cf:xx:xx:80    IP (If 1) address: 172.25.1.11
Hardware Revision: B
Hardware Part No: C04_5A-D_6A-D
Software Version 9.0.35 (FLASH image1), active configuration.
```

System information includes:

- System date and time
- Switch model name and number
- Switch name and location
- Time of last boot
- MAC address of the switch management processor
- IP address of IP interface #1
- Hardware version and part number
- Software image file and version number
- Configuration name
- Log-in banner, if one is configured

/info/log

Show Last 10 Syslog Messages

```
Apr 1 17:28:52 ALERT slb: cannot contact real server 215.118.113.74
Apr 1 17:29:10 NOTICE console: admin login
Apr 1 17:30:01 NOTICE telnet/ssh-1: admin idle timeout from Telnet
Apr 1 18:55:43 NOTICE telnet/ssh-1: admin logout from Telnet
Apr 2 12:56:35 INFO web server: new configuration applied
Apr 2 14:57:35 WARNING slb: filter 10 fired on port 4
Apr 3 7:58:03 ERR telnet: no apply needed
```

Each syslog message has a criticality level associated with it, included in text form as a prefix to the log message. One of eight different prefixes is used, depending on the condition that the administrator is being notified of, as shown below.

- **EMERG:** indicates the system is unusable
- **ALERT:** Indicates action should be taken immediately
- **CRIT:** Indicates critical conditions
- **ERR:** indicates error conditions or errored operations
- **WARNING:** indicates warning conditions
- **NOTICE:** indicates a normal but significant condition
- **INFO:** indicates an information message
- **DEBUG:** indicates a debug-level message

/info/link

Link Status Information

Port	Speed	Duplex	Flow Ctrl		Link
----	-----	-----	--TX--	--RX--	-----
1	10/100	any	yes	yes	down
2	100	full	yes	yes	down
3	10/100	any	yes	yes	down
4	100	half	no	no	up
5	100	half	no	no	down
6	100	half	no	no	down
7	10/100	any	yes	yes	down
8	100	half	no	no	up
9	1000	full	yes	yes	down

Use this command to display link status information about each port on an Alteon Web switch slot, including:

- Port number
- Port speed (10, 100, 10/100, or 1000)
- Duplex mode (half, full, or auto)
- Flow control for transmit and receive (no, yes, or auto)
- Link status (up or down)

For example, if “**/info/link**” is entered from console, link status of all nine ports will be displayed.

/info/stp

Spanning Tree Information

Current Root:		Path-Cost	Port	Hello	MaxAge	FwdDel	Aging
7fff 00:60:cf:40:4c:b0		15	8	2	20	15	300
Number of topology changes:		2					
Time since last topology change:		0 days, 03:24:08					
Parameters:		Priority	Hello	MaxAge	FwdDel	Aging	
		32768	2	20	15	300	
Port	Priority	Cost	State	Designated Bridge	Des Port		
1	128	0	DISABLED				
2	128	0	DISABLED				
3	128	0	DISABLED				
4	128	10	FORWARDING	8000-00:60:cf:43:a4:70	32772		
5	128	0	DISABLED				
6	128	0	DISABLED				
7	128	0	DISABLED				
8	128	10	FORWARDING	8000-00:60:cf:40:61:00	32776		
9	128	0	DISABLED				

The switch software uses the IEEE 802.1d Spanning Tree Protocol (STP). In addition to seeing if STP is enabled or disabled, you can view the following STP bridge information:

- Priority
- Hello interval
- Maximum age value
- Forwarding delay
- Aging time

You can also see the following port-specific STP information:

- Slot number
- Port number and priority
- Cost
- State

The following table describes the STP parameters.

Table 4-10 Spanning Tree Parameter Descriptions

Parameter	Description
Priority (bridge)	The bridge priority parameter controls which bridge on the network will become the STP root bridge.
Hello	The hello time parameter specifies, in seconds, how often the root bridge transmits a configuration bridge protocol data unit (BPDU). Any bridge that is not the root bridge uses the root bridge hello value.
MaxAge	The maximum age parameter specifies, in seconds, the maximum time the bridge waits without receiving a configuration bridge protocol data unit before it reconfigures the STP network.
FwdDel	The forward delay parameter specifies, in seconds, the amount of time that a bridge port has to wait before it changes from learning state to forwarding state.
Aging	The aging time parameter specifies, in seconds, the amount of time the bridge waits without receiving a packet from a station before removing the station from the Forwarding Database.
priority (port)	The port priority parameter helps determine which bridge port becomes the designated port. In a network topology that has multiple bridge ports connected to a single segment, the port with the lowest port priority becomes the designated port for the segment.
Cost	The port path cost parameter is used to help determine the designated port for a segment. Generally speaking, the faster the port, the lower the path cost. A setting of 0 indicates that the cost will be set to the appropriate default after the link speed has been autonegotiated.
State	The state field shows the current state of the port. The state field can be either BLOCKING, LISTENING, LEARNING, FORWARDING, or DISABLED.

/info/vlan

VLAN Information

VLAN	Name	Status	Jumbo	BWC	Ports
1	Default VLAN	ena	n	1024	1-9
2	VLAN 2	ena	n	1024	empty

This information display includes all configured VLANs and all member ports that have an active link state. Port membership is represented in slot/port format.

VLAN information includes:

- VLAN Number
- VLAN Name
- Status
- Jumbo Frame usage (y or n)
- Bandwidth Contract if BWM is enabled
- Port membership of the VLAN

/info/port

Port Information

Port	Tag	RMON	PVID	BWC	NAME	VLAN(s)
1	n	d	1	1024		1
2	n	d	1	1024		1
3	n	d	1	1024		1
4	n	d	1	1024		1
5	n	d	1	1024		1
6	n	d	1	1024		1
7	n	d	1	1024		1
8	n	d	1	1024		1
9	n	d	1	1024		1

Port information includes:

- Port number
- Whether the port uses VLAN tagging or not (y or n)
- Port VLAN ID (PVID)
- Port name
- VLAN membership
- Whether RMON is enabled or disabled on the port

/info/ip

IP Information

```
Interface information:
  1: 172.19.1.201,      255.255.255.0,   172.19.1.255,    vlan 1, up

Default gateway information: metric strict
  1: 172.19.1.1,      up

Current IP forwarding settings: OFF

Current local networks:

Current RIP settings:
  ON, update 30, LISTEN, DEFAULT, STATIC
  split horizon with poisoned reverse

BGP Information:
  OFF, id 172.25.1.26

BGP Peer Information
* 2 205.178.18.40, id 205.178.18.40, hold 90, established
```

IP information includes:

- IP interface information: Interface number, IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, VLAN number, and operational status
- Default gateway information: Metric for selecting which configured gateway to use, gateway number, IP address, and health status
- IP forwarding information: Enable status, lnet and lmask
- Port status
- RIP1 information: enable status, update period, and active modes
- DNS information: primary and secondary DNS IP address, and default domain name
- BGP Peer information

/info/vrrp

VRRP Information

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) support on Alteon Web switches provides redundancy between routers in a LAN. This is accomplished by configuring the same virtual router IP address and ID number on each participating VRRP-capable routing device. One of the virtual routers is then elected as the master, based on a number of priority criteria, and assumes control of the shared virtual router IP address. If the master fails, one of the backup virtual routers will assume routing authority and take control of the virtual router IP address.

VRRP information:

```
1: vrid 2, 205.178.18.210, if 1, renter, prio 100, master, server
2: vrid 1, 205.178.18.202, if 1, renter, prio 100, backup
3: vrid 3, 205.178.18.204, if 1, renter, prio 100, master, proxy
```

When virtual routers are configured, you can view the status of each virtual router using this command. VRRP information includes:

- Virtual router number
- Virtual router ID and IP address
- Interface number
- Ownership status
 - **owner** identifies the preferred master virtual router. A virtual router is the owner when the IP address of the virtual router and its IP interface are the same.
 - **renter** identifies virtual routers which are not owned by this device.
- Priority value. During the election process, the virtual router with the highest priority becomes master.
- Activity status
 - **master** identifies the elected master virtual router.
 - **backup** identifies that the virtual router is in backup mode.
- Server status. The **server** state identifies virtual routers that support Layer 4 services. These are known as virtual *server* routers: any virtual router whose IP address is the same as any configured virtual server IP address.
- Proxy status. The proxy state identifies virtual proxy routers, where the virtual router shares the same IP address as a proxy IP address. The use of virtual proxy routers enables redundant switches to share the same IP address, minimizing the number of unique IP addresses that must be configured.

/info/trunk

Trunk Group Information

Group	Slot	Port	State

1	2	4	DOWN
	2	5	DOWN
	2	6	DOWN
	2	9	DOWN
2	3	1	forwarding
	4	3	DOWN

When trunk groups are configured, you can view the state of each port in the various trunk groups.

NOTE – If Spanning Tree Protocol on any port in the trunk group is set to **forwarding**, the remaining ports in the trunk group will also be set to **forwarding**.

/info/bwm <contract number>

Bandwidth Management Information

Current Bandwidth Management setting: ON

Policy Enforcement:enabled

BWM history will be mailed in 2 hour(s) 21 minute(s)
to '' at host ''

Contract		Policy		wTOS				Save		
Num	Name	Prec	Hard	Soft	Resv	oTOS	uTOS	Buffer	Hist	State
1	mon	1	10	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
2	tue	1	1	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
3	wed	1	1	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
4	thu	1	1	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
5	fri	1	1	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
6	ser80	1	1	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
7	vip	1	255	15m	5m	500k	0D	0	8219	E E
11	bcon_tue	2	1	40m	30m	500k	0D	0	16320	E E
256	Default	--	0	--Available	BW--	0D	0	16320	E E	

NOTE – The contract number is optional.

/info/isd

iSD Information

NOTE – This command is for the iSD100-SSL device running SSL software version 1.0. The information will not appear unless you have configured and connected one or more iSD100-SSL devices to your switch. Information on this screen does not apply if the iSD-SSL is running software version 2.0 and higher.

The iSD information is displayed below:

```
Current isd server configuration:
  10.0.1.10, 1, 0, ON
isd BOOTP server: ON
isd master IP: 10.0.1.10
Network interface for isd: 2
Current isd servers:
state   isd IP       mac_addr      life
-----
  2     10.0.1.10   00:01:02:08:4d:1c  8676

isd system status:
  Total Memory:      264507392
  Free Memory:       252874752
  Buffer Memory:      335872
  Blocks Written:    0
  Blocks Read:       0
  Interrupts:        108
  Context Switches:  20
  User Time:         0
  System Time:       1
  Idle Time:         99
  System status averaged over 3 seconds

isd free disk space:
  total disk size: 50685K
  free disk size: 21671K

SSL app status:
  total connections   = 0
  running threads     = 7
  current connections = 0
  maximum connections = 0
```

Table 4-11 describes the iSD100-SSL information output:

Table 4-11 /info/isd Output

Parameter	Description
Current isd server configuration	This line contains the following data about basic iSD100-SSL configuration: ■ Starting IP address (ipstart) of the iSD100-SSL units ■ Number of iSD100-SSL units (ipnum) configured on the Web switch ■ Virtual router number (vrnum) ■ State of Web switch iSD100-SSL processing, on or off.
isd BOOTP server	State of the BOOTP server which assigns IP addresses to the iSD100-SSL: on or off.
isd master IP	IP address of the Master iSD100-SSL.
Network interface for isd	The IP interface configured for communication between the Web switch and the iSD100-SSL.
Current isd servers	There is one line for each configured iSD100-SSL, with the following data: ■ state 2 means that IP address has been assigned. ■ isd IP The IP address assigned to the iSD100-SSL. ■ mac_addr The MAC address of the iSD100-SSL. ■ life This represents the number of milliseconds since the iSD100-SSL sent a signal to the Web switch. If life exceeds 120,000 ms, the switch considers the iSD100-SSL to be down, and no further traffic will be directed to that iSD100-SSL until it comes back up. If the down iSD100-SSL is a Master, the switch will select another Master Web OS. If no other iSD100-SSL units are up and available, HTTPS traffic will be sent directly to the real Web servers on port 443.
isd system status	Memory and time usage characteristics averages over three seconds.
isd free disk space	Total and available disk space available on the iSD100-SSL.
SSL app status	SSL connection and thread information.

/info/swkey

Software Enabled Keys

For optional Layer 4 switching software, the information would be displayed as follows

Enabled Software features: Layer 4: SLB + WCR Layer 4: GSLB

Software key information includes a list of all the optional software packages which have been activated or installed on your switch.

/info/dump

Information Dump

Use the dump command to dump all switch information available from the Information Menu (10K or more, depending on your configuration). This data is useful for tuning and debugging switch performance.

If you want to capture dump data to a file, set your communication software on your workstation to capture session data prior to issuing the dump commands.



CHAPTER 5

The Statistics Menu

You can view switch performance statistics in both the user and administrator command modes. This chapter discusses how to use the command line interface to display switch statistics.

/stats

Statistics Menu

```
[Statistics Menu]
  port      - Port Stats Menu
  slb       - Server Load Balancing Stats Menu
  bwm       - Bandwidth Management Stats Menu
  mp        - MP-specific Stats Menu
  if        - Show IP interface ("if") stats
  ip        - Show IP stats
  icmp      - Show ICMP stats
  tcp       - Show TCP stats
  udp       - Show UDP stats
  snmp      - Show SNMP stats
  fdb       - Show FDB stats
  route     - Show route stats
  arp       - Show ARP stats
  dns       - Show DNS stats
  vrrp      - Show VRRP stats
  dump      - Dump all stats
```

Table 5-1 Statistics Menu Options (/stats)

Command Syntax and Usage

port <port number (1-9)>

Displays the Port Statistics Menu for the specified port. Use this command to display traffic statistics on a port-by-port basis. Traffic statistics are included in SNMP Management Information Base (MIB) objects. To view menu options, see [page 78](#).

slb

Displays the Server Load Balancing (SLB) Menu. To view menu options, see [page 83](#).

bwm

Displays the Bandwidth Management Menu. To view menu options, see [page 102](#).

mp

Displays the Management Processor Statistics Menu. Use this command to view information on how switch management processes and resources are currently being allocated. To view menu options, see [page 105](#).

if <interface number (1-256)>

Displays IP interface statistics for the management processors. See [page 109](#) for sample output.

ip

Displays IP statistics. See [page 109](#) for sample output.

icmp

Displays ICMP statistics. See [page 110](#) for sample output.

tcp

Displays TCP statistics. See [page 110](#) for sample output.

udp

Displays UDP statistics. See [page 110](#) for sample output.

snmp

Displays SNMP statistics. See [page 111](#) for sample output.

fdb

Displays FDB statistics. See [page 112](#) for sample output.

route

Displays route statistics. See [page 113](#) for sample output.

arp

Displays Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) statistics. See [page 113](#) for sample output.

dns

Displays Domain Name Server (DNS) statistics. See [page 113](#) for sample output.

Table 5-1 Statistics Menu Options (/stats)

Command Syntax and Usage	
vrrp	When virtual routers are configured, you can display the following protocol statistics for VRRP: ■ Advertisements received (<code>vrrpInAdvers</code>) ■ Advertisements transmitted (<code>vrrpOutAdvers</code>) ■ Advertisements received, but ignored (<code>vrrpBadAdvers</code>) See page 114 for sample output.
dump	Dumps all switch statistics. Use this command to gather data for tuning and debugging switch performance. If you want to capture dump data to a file, set your communication software on your workstation to capture session data prior to issuing the dump command. For details, see page 114.

/stats/port <port number>

Port Statistics Menu

This menu displays traffic statistics on a port-by-port basis. Traffic statistics include SNMP Management Information Base (MIB) objects.

[Port Statistics Menu]	
brg	- Bridging ("dot1") statistics
ether	- Ethernet ("dot3") statistics
if	- Interface ("if") statistics
ip	- Internet Protocol ("IP") stats
link	- Link stats
rmon	- Show RMON stats
cpu	- Show CPU utilization
maint	- Maintenance stats

Table 5-2 Port Statistics Menu Options (/stats/port)

Command Syntax and Usage	
brg	Displays bridging ("dot1") statistics for the port. See page 79 for sample output.
ether	Displays Ethernet ("dot1") statistics for the port. See page 79 for sample output.
if	Displays interface statistics for the port. See page 80 for sample output.
ip	Displays IP statistics for the port. See page 80 for sample output.
link	Displays link statistics for the port. See page 80 for sample output.
rmon	Displays RMON statistics for the port. See page 81 for sample output.
cpu	Displays CPU statistics for the port. CPU statistics are for periods of 1, 4, and 64 seconds. See page 81 for sample output.
maint	Displays maintenance statistics for the port. See page 82 for sample output.

/stats/port *<port number>* **/brg**

Bridging Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the bridging statistics of the selected port.

```
Bridging statistics for port 1:
dot1PortInFrames:                187155
dot1PortOutFrames:               1059212
dot1PortInDiscards:              0
dot1TpLearnedEntryDiscards:      0
dot1BasePortDelayExceededDiscards: 0
dot1BasePortMtuExceededDiscards: 0
dot1StpPortForwardTransitions:   1
```

/stats/port *<port number>* **/ether**

Ethernet Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the ethernet statistics of the selected port.

```
Ethernet statistics for port 1:
dot3StatsAlignmentErrors:        0
dot3StatsFCSErrors:              0
dot3StatsSingleCollisionFrames:  0
dot3StatsMultipleCollisionFrames: 0
dot3StatsSQETestErrors:          0
dot3StatsDeferredTransmissions:  0
dot3StatsLateCollisions:         0
dot3StatsExcessiveCollisions:    0
dot3StatsInternalMacTransmitErrors: 0
dot3StatsCarrierSenseErrors:     0
dot3StatsFrameTooLongs:          0
dot3StatsInternalMacReceiveErrors: 0
dot3CollFrequencies [1-15]:
  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

/stats/port *<port number>* **/if**

Interface Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the interface statistics of the selected port.

```
Interface statistics for port 1:
                ifHCIn Counters          ifHCOut Counters
Octets:                12046215          86913772
UcastPkts:            187106            211622
BroadcastPkts:        248              294478
MulticastPkts:        8                554238
Discards:              0                0
Errors:                0                0
ifInUnknownProtos:    0
```

/stats/port *<port number>* **/ip**

Interface Protocol Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the interface statistics of the selected port.

```
IP statistics for port 1:
ipInReceives:          0   ipInHdrErrors:          0
ipInAddrErrors:        0   ipForwDatagrams:        0
ipInUnknownProtos:     0   ipInDiscards:          0
ipInDelivers:          0   ipCacheFull:           0
ipTtlExceeds:          0   ipQueueFull:           0
ipFragOKs:              0   ipFragCreates:         0
ipDontFrgs:             0   ipFragFails:           0
```

/stats/port *<port number>* **/link**

Link Statistics

This menu enables you to display the link statistics of the selected port.

```
Link statistics for port :    1
linkStateChange:             1
```


/stats/port <port number>/rmon

RMON Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the remote monitor statistics of the selected port.

RMON statistics for port 1:		
etherStatsDropEvents:		0
etherStatsOctets:		192
etherStatsPkts:		3
etherStatsBroadcastPkts:		0
etherStatsMulticastPkts:		0
etherStatsCRCAlignErrors:		0
etherStatsUndersizePkts:		0
etherStatsOversizePkts:		0
etherStatsFragments:		0
etherStatsJabbers:		0
etherStatsCollisions:		0
etherStatsPkts64Octets:		3
etherStatsPkts65to127Octets:		0
etherStatsPkts128to255Octets:		0
etherStatsPkts256to511Octets:		0
etherStatsPkts512to1023Octets:		0
etherStatsPkts1024to1518Octets:		0

/stats/port <port number>/cpu

CPU Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the CPU statistics of the selected port.

CPU utilization for port 8:			
cpuAUtil1Second:	0%	cpuBUtil1Second:	0%
cpuAUtil4Seconds:	0%	cpuBUtil4Seconds:	0%
cpuAUtil64Seconds:	0%	cpuBUtil64Seconds:	0%

/stats/port *<port number>* **/maint**

Maintenance Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the maintenance statistics of the selected port.

```
Maintenance statistics for port 1:
ddwOvflo:                0    ddwOvfloOvflo:                0
dmaRdOverrun:            0    dmaRdUnderrun:            0
dmaWrOverrun:            0    dmaWrUnderrun:            0
txFlowCntrl'd:          0    rxFlowCntrl'd:            0
linkStateChange:         1    macRxBufClean:            1
pfdbFreeEmpty:           0    macRxBufCldma:            0
resolveErrNoddw:         0    macRxBufCldmaOvflo:       0
learnErrNoddw:           0    macRxBufCldmaDescr0:      1
deleteMiss:              0    macRxBufCldmaDescr1:      0
txOvfloOvflo:           0    macRxBufCldmaDescrN:      0
mac_rx_err:
  CRC                    0    Collided                  0
  LinkErr                0    PhyErr                    0
  Nibble                 0    Abort                     0
  Runt                   0    NoBuffer                  0
  Over32k                0    Over16k                   0
  Over9k                 0
```

/stats/slb

Load Balancing Statistics

[Server Load Balancing Statistics Menu]	
port	- SLB Switch Port Stats Menu
real	- Show real server stats
group	- Show real server group stats
virt	- Show virtual server stats
filt	- Show filter stats
gslb	- Show global SLB stats
url	- Show URL SLB and Redirection stats
ssl	- Show SSL SLB stats
rurl	- Show RURL stats
ftp	- Show FTP SLB parsing and NAT stats
rtsp	- Show RTSP SLB stats
wap	- Show WAP SLB stats
maint	- Show maintenance stats
clear	- Clear non-operational Server Load Balancing stats
dump	- Dump all SLB statistics

Table 5-3 SLB Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage

port <port number (1-9)>
Displays the switch port statistics. See [page 88](#) for sample output.

real <real server number (1-255)>
Displays the following real server statistics:

- Number of times the real server has failed its health checks
- Number of sessions currently open on the real server
- Total sessions the real server was assigned
- Highest number of simultaneous sessions recorded for each real server
- Real server transmit/receive octets

See [page 85](#) for sample output.

group <real server group number (1-256)>
Displays the following real server group statistics:

- Current and total sessions for each real server in the real server group.
- Current and total sessions for all real servers associated with the real server group.
- Highest number of simultaneous sessions recorded for each real server.
- Real server transmit/receive octets. For per-service octet counters, see the procedure on [page 85](#).

See [page 86](#) for sample output.

Table 5-3 SLB Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage

virt <virtual server number (1-256)>

Displays the following virtual server statistics:

- Current and total sessions for each real server associated with the virtual server.
- Current and total sessions for all real servers associated with the virtual server.
- Highest number of simultaneous sessions recorded for each real server.
- Real server transmit/receive octets. For per-service octet counters, see [page 87](#).

See [page 87](#) for sample output.

filt <filter ID (1-224)>Displays the total number of times any filter has been used. See [page 87](#) for sample output.

gslbDisplays the Global SLB Statistics Menu. For more information, see [page 91](#).

urlDisplays URL SLB and redirection statistics. See [page 93](#) for sample output.

sslDisplays SSL server load balancing statistics. See [page 95](#) for sample output.

rurlDisplays RURL statistics. These statistics will be displayed only if the Web switch is connected to an Alteon Integrated Service Director (iSD) with RURL enabled. See [page 95](#) for sample output.

ftpDisplays FTP SLB parsing and NAT statistics. See [page 95](#) for sample output.

rtspDisplays RTSP SLB statistics. See [page 98](#) for sample output.

wapDisplays WAP SLB statistics. See [page 98](#) for sample output.

maintDisplays SLB maintenance statistics. See [page 99](#) for sample output.

clear [y|n]Clears all non-operating SLB statistics on the Web switch, resetting them to zero. This command does not reset the switch and does **not** affect the following counters:

- Counters required for Layer 4 and Layer 7 operation (such as current real server sessions).
- All related SNMP counters.

To view the statistics reset by this command, refer to [Table 5-8 on page 100](#).

Table 5-3 SLB Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage	
dump	Dumps all switch SLB statistics. Use this command to gather data for tuning and debugging switch performance. To save dump data to a file, set your communication software on your workstation to capture session data prior to issuing the dump command.

/stats/slb/real <real server number>

Real Server SLB Statistics

Real server 1 stats:	
Health check failures:	0
Current sessions:	129
Total sessions:	65478
Highest sessions:	4343
Octets	523824000

NOTE – Octets are provided per server, not per service, unless configured as described below.

Per Service Octet Counters

For each load-balanced real server, the octet counters represent the combined number of transmit and receive bytes (octets). These counters are then added to report the total octets for each virtual server.

The octet counters are provided per server—not per service. If you need octet counters on a per-service basis, you can accomplish this through the following configuration:

- 1. Configure a separate IP address for each service on each server being load balanced.**
For instance, you can configure IP address 10.1.1.20 for HTTP services, and 10.1.1.21 for FTP services on the same physical server.
- 2. On the Web switch, configure a real server with a real IP address for each service above.**
Continuing the example above, two real servers would be configured for the physical server (representing each real service). If there were five physical servers providing the two services (HTTP and FTP), 10 real servers would have to be configured: five for the HTTP services on each physical server, and five for the FTP services on each physical server.

3. **On the Web switch, configure one real server group for each type of service, and group each appropriate real server IP address into the group that handles the specific service.**

Thus, in keeping with our example, two groups would be configured: one for handling HTTP and one for handling FTP.

4. **Configure a virtual server and add the appropriate services to that virtual server.**

/stats/slb/group *<real server group number>*

Real Server Group Statistics

Real server group 1 stats:					
Real IP address		Current Sessions	Total Sessions	Highest Sessions	Octets
1	200.100.10.14	20	60	9	480000
2	200.100.10.15	20	77	12	616000
		40	137	21	1096000

Real server group statistics include the following:

- Current and total sessions for each real server in the real server group.
- Current and total sessions for all real servers associated with the real server group.
- Highest number of simultaneous sessions recorded for each real server.
- Real server transmit/receive octets. For per-service octet counters, see the procedure on [page 85](#).

/stats/slb/virt <virtual server number>

Virtual Server SLB Statistics

Virtual server 1 stats:					
Real IP address	Current Sessions	Total Sessions	Highest Sessions	Octets	
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	
1 200.100.10.14	20	60	9	480000	
2 200.100.10.15	20	77	12	616000	
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	
200.100.10.20	40	309	21	1096000	

NOTE – The virtual server IP address is shown on the last line, below the real server IP addresses.

Virtual server statistics include the following:

- Current and total sessions for each real server associated with the virtual server.
- Current and total sessions for all real servers associated with the virtual server.
- Highest number of simultaneous sessions recorded for each real server.
- Real server transmit/receive octets. For per-service octet counters, see [page 85](#).

/stats/slb/filt <filter number>

Filter SLB Statistics

Filter 1 stats:	
Total firings:	1011

You can obtain the total number of times any filter has been used.

/stats/slb/port <port number>

Port SLB Statistics

[Server Load Balancing Port Statistics Menu]	
real	- Show real server stats
group	- Show real server group stats
virt	- Show virtual server stats
filt	- Show filter stats
maint	- Show maintenance stats
clear	- Clear port stats

Table 5-4 Switch Processor SLB Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb/sp)

Command Syntax and Usage

real <real server number (1-255)>
Displays real server statistics for the selected port. See page 89 for sample output.
group <real server group number (1-256)>
Displays real server group statistics for the selected port. See page 89 for sample output.
virt <virtual server number (1-256)>
Displays virtual server statistics for the selected port. See page 89 for sample output.
filt <filter ID (1-224)>
Displays filter statistics for the selected port. See page 90 for sample output.
maint
Displays maintenance statistics for the selected port. See page 90 for sample output
clear
Clears the following non-operating SLB statistics for this port, resetting them to zero: Real server stats: Octets, Total sessions Real server group: Octets, Total sessions Virtual server: Octets, Total sessions Total firings: Octets

/stats/slb/port <#>/real <server number>

Port Real Server SLB Statistics

Port 1 Real server 1 stats:	
Current sessions:	9
Total sessions:	24
Octets:	192000

/stats/slb/port <#>/group <group number>

Port Real Server Group SLB Statistics

Port 1 Real server group 1 stats:					
		Current	Total	Highest	
Real	IP address	Sessions	Sessions	Sessions	Octets

20	200.100.10.14	9	24	16	192000
21	200.100.10.15	12	23	15	184000

		21	47	31	376000

/stats/slb/port <#>/virt <server number>

Port Virtual Server SLB Statistics

Port 1 Virtual server 1 stats:					
		Current	Total	Highest	
Real	IP address	Sessions	Sessions	Sessions	Octets

20	200.100.10.14	9	24	16	192000
21	200.100.10.15	12	23	15	184000

	200.100.13.1	21	47	31	376000

NOTE – The virtual server IP address is shown in the “Totals” area below the real server IP addresses.

/stats/slb/port <#>/filter <filter number>

Port Filter SLB Statistics

Filter 1 stats:	
Total firings:	1011

This menu option displays the total number of times a filter has been fired on a specific port.

/stats/slb/port <#>/maint <server number>

Port Maintenance SLB Statistics

Port 1 SLB Maintenance stats:	
Maximum sessions:	64512
Current sessions:	0
4 second average:	0
64 second average:	0
Terminated sessions:	0
Allocation failures:	0
Non TCP/IP frames:	0
TCP fragments:	0
UDP datagrams:	0
Incorrect VIPs:	0
Incorrect Vports:	0
No available real server:	0
Filtered (denied) frames:	0
VMA discards:	0

/stats/slb/gslb

Global SLB Statistics

[Global SLB Statistics Menu]

real

- Show Real server Global SLB stats

group

- Show Real server group Global SLB stats

virt

- Show Virtual server Global SLB stats

maint

- Show Global SLB maintenance stats

Table 5-5 Global SLB Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb/gslb)

Command Syntax and Usage

- real** <real server number (1-255)>

Where the real server number represents the real server ID on this switch, under which the remote server is configured.

To view an example and description of what is displayed on-screen, see [page 91](#).
- group** <real server group number (1-256)>

To view an example and description of what is displayed on-screen, see [page 92](#).
- virtual** <virtual server number (1-256)>

To view an example and description of what is displayed on-screen, see [page 92](#).
- maint**

To view an example and description of what is displayed on-screen, see [page 93](#).

/stats/slb/gslb/real <real server number>

Real Server Global SLB Statistics

Real server 1 global stats:

DNS handoffs:

3210

HTTP redirects:

12

For any remote real server configured for Global Server Load Balancing, the following statistics can be viewed:

- Number of DNS hand-offs to the remote server
- Number of HTTP redirects to the remote server

/stats/slb/gslb/group <group number>

Real Server Group Global SLB Statistics

Real server group 1 Global SLB stats:				
Real server	IP address	DNS Handoffs	HTTP Redirects	
1	205.178.13.54	1240	30	
2	205.178.13.223	608	12	
Totals		1848	42	

Real server group global statistics include the following:

- Number of DNS hand-offs to each remote real server in the group
- Number of HTTP redirects to each remote real server in the group
- Total DNS hand-offs and HTTP redirects to the remote real servers in the group

/stats/slb/gslb/virt <virtual server number>

Virtual Server Global SLB Statistics

Virtual server 1 Global SLB stats:				
Service	Server	IP address	Response time	Min sessions avail
http	v1	205.178.13.55	16	21190
http	r1	205.178.13.54	10	24120
telnet	v1	205.178.13.55	4	31032

Virtual server global statistics include the following:

- Service: type of service running on the virtual server
- Server: type of server configuration and server ID number.
 - **v#** represents a local virtual server number
 - **r#** represents a remote site. Since each remote sites is configured on its peers as if it were a real server (with certain special properties), the number represents the real server ID on this switch, under which the remote server is configured.
- IP address of the server

- Response time: the average time (present weighted) that each service takes to respond to information exchanges with its peers. The time is specified in ticks of 65 milliseconds.
- Minimum sessions available: the current number of sessions available for serving client requests. This number will change as client traffic loads change, or as real servers under the virtual server or remote sites go in or out of service.

/stats/slb/gslb/maint

Global SLB Maintenance Statistics

```
Global SLB maintenance stats:
Updates received:           0
Bad updates received:       0
```

Global SLB maintenance statistics include the following:

- The number of Distributed Site State Protocol (DSSP) updates received from remote sites.
- The number of bad DSSP updates received from remote sites. Bad updates usually indicate that there is a GSLB switch configuration problem. If bad updates occur, check your sys log for configuration error messages.

/stats/slb/url

SLB URL and Redirection Statistics

```
[URL SLB and Redirection Statistics Menu]
redir    - Show URL Redirection stats
lb        - Show URL SLB stats
maint     - Show URL SLB/Redir Maintenance stats
```

/stats/slb/url/redir

URL SLB Redirection Statistics

```
Total URL based web cache redirection stats:
Total cache server hits:           73942
Total origin server hits:          2244
Total none-GETs hits:              0
Total 'Cookie: ' hits:             0
Total no-cache hits:               0
```

/stats/slb/url/lb

URL SLB Statistics

SLB String stats:		
ID	Server Load Balance String	Hits
1	any	73881
2	.gif	3203
3	/sales	879
5	/manual	162102

/stats/slb/url/maint

URL Maintenance Statistics

Clients reset by switch on server side:	0	
Connection Splicing to support HTTP/1.1:	0	
Half open connections:	0	
Switch retries:	0	
Random early drops:	0	
Current SP[1] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[2] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[3] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[4] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[5] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[6] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[7] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP[8] memory units:	78	Lowest: 78
Current SP memory units:	624	
Current SEQ buffer entries:	0	Highest: 0
Current URL buffer use:	0	Highest: 0
Current SP buffer entries:	0	Highest: 0
Total Nonzero SEQ Alloc:	0	
Total SEQ Buffer Allocs:	0	Total SEQ Frees: 0
Total URL Buffer Allocs:	0	Total URL Frees: 0
Alloc Fails - Seq buffers:	0	Alloc Fails - Ubufs: 0
Max sessions per bucket:	0	Max frames per session: 0
Max bytes buffered (sess):	0	

/stats/slb/ssl

SLB Secure /Socket Layer Statistics

SSL SLB maintenance stats:			
SessionId allocation fails:			
	Current	Total	0 Highest
	Sessions	Sessions	Sessions

Unique SessionIds	0	0	0
SSL connections	0	0	0
Persistent Port Sessions	0	0	0

/stats/slb/rurl

RURL Statistics

[RURL Statistics Menu]	
error	- RURL Error Stats
info	- RURL Informational Stats
maint	- RURL Maintenance Stats
redir	- RURL Redirection Stats

/stats/slb/ftp

File Transfer Protocol SLB and Filter Statistics

[FTP SLB parsing and Filter Statistics Menu]	
active	- Show active FTP NAT filter stats
parsing	- Show FTP SLB parsing server stats
maint	- Show FTP maintenance stats
dump	- Dump all FTP SLB/NAT stats

Table 5-6 FTP SLB Parsing and Filter Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb/ftp)

Command Syntax and Usage

active

Shows active FTP SLB parsing and filter statistics. See [page 96](#) for sample output.

parsing

Shows parsing statistics. See [page 96](#) for sample output.

Table 5-6 FTP SLB Parsing and Filter Statistics Menu Options (/stats/slb/ftp)**Command Syntax and Usage****maint**Shows maintenance statistics. See [page 96](#) for sample output.**dump**Shows all FTP SLB/NAT statistics. See [page 97](#).

/stats/slb/ftp/active

Active FTP SLB Parsing and Filter Statistics

```
>> FTP SLB parsing and Filter Statistics# dump
Total FTP :                                0
Total FTP NAT Filtered:                    0
Total new active FTP NAT Index:             0
Total new FTP SLB parsing Index:            0
FTP Active FTP NAT ACK/SEQ diff:            0
FTP SLB parsing ACK/SEQ diff:               0
```

/stats/slb/ftp/parsing

Passive FTP SLB Parsing Statistics

```
Total FTP SLB Parsing Stats(PASV):
Total FTP:                                0
Total New FTP SLB parsing Index:          0
FTP SLB parsing ACK/SEQ diff:              0
```

/stats/slb/ftp/maint

FTP SLB Maintenance Statistics

```
FTP Buffer copy error:                      0
FTP mode switch error:                      0
```


/stats/slb/ftp/dump

FTP SLB Statistics Dump

Total FTP :	0
Total FTP NAT Filtered:	0
Total new active FTP NAT Index:	0
Total new FTP SLB parsing Index:	0
FTP Active FTP NAT ACK/SEQ diff:	0
FTP SLB parsing ACK/SEQ diff:	0
FTP Buffer copy error:	0
FTP mode switch error:	0

/stats/slb/rtsp

RTSP SLB Statistics

Total number of active RTSP control connections:	0
Total number of active UDP streams:	0
Total number of switch redirects:	0
Total connections denied due to RTSP connection limit:	0
Total cases of heap mem alloc failures:	0

/stats/slb/wap

WAP SLB Statistics

WAP Maintenance stats:			
current sessions:	0		
allocation failures:	0		
incorrect VIPs:	0		
incorrect Vports:	0		
no available real server:	0		
requests to wrong SP:	0		

TCP External Notification stats:			
add session reqs:	0	del session reqs:	0
req fails- q full:	0	req fails- q full:	0
req fails- SP dead:	0	req fails- SP dead:	0
entries in use:	0	entries in use:	0
max entries in use:	0	max entries in use:	0

RADIUS Snooping stats:			
acct reqs:	0	acct wrap reqs:	0
acct start reqs:	0	acct update reqs:	0
acct stop reqs:	0	acct bad reqs:	0
add session reqs:	0	del session reqs:	0
req fails- q full:	0	req fails- SP dead:	0
req fails- DMA:	0	max entries in use:	0

/stats/slb/maint

SLB Maintenance Statistics

SLB Maintenance stats:	
Maximum sessions:	516096
Current sessions:	0
4 second average:	0
64 second average:	0
Terminated sessions:	0
Allocation failures:	0
TCP fragments:	0
UDP datagrams:	0
Non TCP/IP frames:	0
Incorrect VIPs:	0
Incorrect Vports:	0
No available real server:	0
Backup server activations:	0
Overflow server activations:	0
Filtered (denied) frames:	0
Filtered max sess exceeded:	0
VMA discards:	0
Bad buffer copies:	0

SLB Maintenance statistics are described in the following table.

Table 5-7 Server Load Balancing Maintenance Statistics

Statistic	Description
Current Sessions	Number of session bindings currently in use the last 4 and 64 seconds.
Terminated Sessions	Number of session removed from the session table because the the server assigned to them failed and graceful server failure was not enabled.
Allocation Failures	Indicates instances where the switch ran out of available bindings for a port.
TCP Fragments	Indicates the number of TCP fragments encountered by the switch. Layer 4 processing might not handle TCP fragments, depending on configuration.
UDP Datagrams	Indicates that the virtual server IP address and MAC are receiving UDP frames when UDP balancing is not turned on.
Non TCP/IP Frames	Indicates the number of non-IP based frames received by the virtual server.
Incorrect VIPs	Indicates the number of times the switch has received a Layer 4 request for a virtual server which was not configured.

Table 5-7 Server Load Balancing Maintenance Statistics (Continued)

Statistic	Description
Incorrect Vports	This dropped frames counter indicates that the virtual server has received frames for TCP/UDP services that have not been configured. Normally this indicates a mis-configuration on the virtual server or the client, but it may be an indication of a potential security probing application like SATAN.
No Server Available	This dropped frames counter indicates that all real servers are either out of service or at their maxcon limit.
Backup Server Activations	This indicates the number of times a real server failure has occurred and caused a backup server to be brought online.
Overflow Server Activations	This indicates the number of times a real server has reached the maxcon limit and caused an overflow server to be brought online.
Filtered (Denied) Frames	This indicates the number of frames that were dropped because they matched an active filter with the “deny” action set.

/stats/slb/clear

Clearing the SLB Statistics

The following statistics are reset to zero when the clear command is given and confirmed:

Table 5-8 SLB Statistics Reset using **/stats/slb/clear**

Statistic	
Real server stats:	Health check failures Total sessions Highest sessions Octets
Real server group stats:	Total sessions Highest sessions Octets
Virtual server stats:	Total sessions Highest sessions Octets
Filter stats:	Total firings
SLB switch port stats, per port:	Real server stats: Octets, Total sessions Real server group: Octets, Total sessions Virtual server: Octets, Total sessions Total firings: Octets

Table 5-8 SLB Statistics Reset using `/stats/slb/clear`

Statistic	
Global SLB stats:	Per real server: DNS handoffs HTTP redirects Per server group: DNS handoffs HTTP redirects
URL SLB and Redirection stats:	Redir: Total cache server hits Total origin server hits Total none-GETs hits Total 'Cookie: ' hits Total no-cache hits LB: ID SLB String hits
SSL SLB stats:	Total Sessions Highest Sessions
FTP SLB parsing and NAT stats:	Total FTP Total FTP NAT Filtered Total new active FTP NAT Index Total new FTP SLB parsing Index FTP Active FTP NAT ACK/SEQ diff FTP SLB parsing ACK/SEQ diff
Real server stats:	Health check failures Total sessions Highest sessions Octets
Real server group stats:	Total sessions Highest sessions Octets
Virtual server stats:	Total sessions Highest sessions Octets

/stats/bwm

Bandwidth Management Statistics

[Bandwidth Management Statistics Menu]	
sp	- Switch Processor Contract Stats Menu
cont	- BW Contract stats
rcont	- BW Contract rate stats
hist	- BW History stats
dump	- Dump all BWM statistics

Table 5-9 Bandwidth Management Statistics Menu Options (/stats/bwm)

Command Syntax and Usage

sp *<port number (1-9)>*
Displays Switch processor Contract Statistics Menu. To view menu options, see [page 103](#).

cont *<BW Contract number (1-256)>*
Displays bandwidth management contract statistics.

rcont *<BW Contract number (1-256)>*
Displays bandwidth management contract rate statistics.

hist
Displays bandwidth management history statistics.

dump
Displays all bandwidth management statistics.

/stats/bwm/sp

Bandwidth Management Switch Processor Statistics

[Bandwidth Management Statistics Menu]

cont - BW Contract stats

rcont - BW Contract rate stats

Table 5-10 Management Processor Statistics Menu Options (/stats/bwm/sp)

Command Syntax and Usage

cont <BW Contract number (1-256)>

Displays bandwidth management contract statistics.

rcont <BW Contract number (1-256)>

Displays bandwidth management contract rate statistics.

/stats/bwm/cont <contract number>

Bandwidth Management Contract Statistics

BW Contract statistics

Contract NameOctetsDiscardsBufUsedBufMax

100032640

20032640

Use this command to show statistics for all contracts or a specific contract.

/stats/bwm/rcont

Bandwidth Management Contract Rate Statistics

BW Contract statistics					
Contract	Name	Rate(Kbps)	Octets	Discards	BufUsed BufMax

6		0	0	0	0 293760
256	Default	8	7476567	0	0 293760
4		0	0	0	0 293760
6		0	0	0	0 293760
256	Default	3	7477355	0	0 293760
4		0	0	0	0 293760
6		0	0	0	0 293760
256	Default	1	7477681	0	0 293760
4		0	0	0	0 293760
6		0	0	0	0 293760
256	Default	12	7480867	0	0 293760
4		0	0	0	0 293760
6		0	0	0	0 293760
256	Default	1	7481129	0	0 293760

Use this command to show the rate statistics of all the enabled contracts.

/stats/bwm/hist

Bandwidth Management History Statistics

BW History statistics			
Cont	Octets	Discards	TimeStamp

1	0	0	012215:47
2	0	0	012215:47
3	0	0	012215:47
4	0	0	012215:47
10	0	0	012215:47
11	0	0	012215:47
1024	34122	0	012215:47

Use this command to show the history of all the contracts for which history is enabled. The sampling is done at one-minute intervals.

/stats/mp

Management Processor Statistics

[MP-specific Statistics Menu]	
mem	- Show STEM memory stats
amem	- Show All STEM memory blocks in use
dma	- Show DMA exception counts
pkt	- Show Packet stats
tcb	- Show All TCP control blocks in use
ucb	- Show All UDP control blocks in use
uart	- Show UART counters
cpu	- Show CPU utilization

Table 5-11 Management Processor Statistics Menu Options (/stats/mp)

Command Syntax and Usage

mem	Displays STEM memory statistics, showing available memory.
amem	Displays all STEM memory blocks in use to check for leaks.
dma	Displays DMA exception counts.
pkt	Displays packet statistics, to check for leads and load.
tcb	Displays all TCP control blocks in use.
ucb	Displays all UDP control blocks in use.
uart	Displays universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter (UART) statistics.
cpu	Displays CPU utilization for periods of up to 1, 4, and 64 seconds.

/stats/mp/mem

STEM Memory Statistics

```

STEM memory stats:
allocs:          52948    frees:          52610
alloc_fails:      0      pool_bytes:    3696816
bytes_curr:    198048    bytes_hiwat:    210976
largest:         65536

```

/stats/mp/amem

All STEM Memory Statistics

```

All STEM memory allocated blocks:
Number      Caller      Blocks      Bytes
-----
1      00047628      21      86016
2      000c1bfc       1       64
3      000c2ca4       1       32
4      000c1c98       9      576
5      000c2d88       9      576
6      000c1cd8       9     1152
7      000b595c       5      320
8      0004496c       1     2048
9      0002cb18       1       32
10     0000af38       1     4096

```

/stats/mp/dma

DMA Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the DMA exception counts.

```

DMA counts:
RdOverruns:      0      RdUnderrun:      0
WrOverruns:      0      WrUnderrun:      0
Ovflos:          553    OvfloOvflos:      0

Mailbox Off: false
mailbox off:     358961  mailbox on:      358961

DMA Read Off: false
dma read off:    0      dma read on:      0

```

/stats/mp/pkt

Packet Statistics

```
Packet counts:
allocs:      1367726    frees:      1367726
mediums:      0        jumbos:      0
smalls:      0        failures:    0
```

/stats/mp/tcb

TCP Statistics

```
All TCP allocated control blocks:
00494b9c:  0.0.0.0          0 <=> 0.0.0.0          80 listen
00499d7c: 172.25.1.101    1055 <=> 172.25.1.11    23 estab-
lished
0049879c:  0.0.0.0          0 <=> 0.0.0.0          23 listen
0049851c:  0.0.0.0          0 <=> 0.0.0.0          22 listen
```

/stats/mp/ucb

UCB Statistics

```
All UDP allocated control blocks:
53: listen
161: listen
```

/stats/mp/uart

UART Statistics

```

UART:
  input overflows:      0
  tx hang fix:          0
  Rx discards:          0  Tx discards:          0
  X-OFFs seen:          0  X-ONs seen:          0
  X-OFFs sent:          0  X-ONs sent:          0
  Software RX FIFO discards: 0
UART Info:
  State:
    bRxEmpty 1,  bTxEmpty 1,  bRxXoff 0,  bTxXoff 0,  bTxActive 0,
  bRxXPend 0
    bBlockTx 0

  Buf Info:
    RX Buf Start - 0028aad0, Buf End - 0028aed0, Prod - 0028aad0, Cons
- 0028aad0
    TX Buf Start - 0028aed0, Buf End - 0028b2d0, Prod - 0028b1bc, Cons
- 0028b1bc
  Queue Info:
    Blk RX Thd - 003d14e0,

    TX Blk Queue - 0040a1f4, End - 0040a20c, Num Thd - 0, Num Buf Full
- 0
    TOQ - 0040a1f4, BOQ - 0040a1f4

```

/stats/mp/cpu

CPU Statistics

This menu option enables you to display the CPU utilization statistics.

```

CPU utilization:
cpuAUtil1Second:          6%  cpuBUtil1Second:          6%
cpuAUtil4Seconds:         6%  cpuBUtil4Seconds:          6%
cpuAUtil64Seconds:        6%  cpuBUtil64Seconds:         6%

```

/stats/if *<interface number>*

Interface Statistics

IP interface 1 statistics:			
ifInOctets:	2435148747	ifInUcastPkts:	1000174
ifInNUcastPkts:	2365278	ifInDiscards:	0
ifInErrors:	0	ifInUnknownProtos:	27
ifOutOctets:	0	ifOutUcastPkts:	0
ifOutNUcastPkts:	0	ifOutDiscards:	0
ifOutErrors:	0	ifStateChanges	0

/stats/ip

IP Statistics

IP statistics:			
ipInReceives:	3115873	ipInHdrErrors:	1
ipInAddrErrors:	35447	ipForwDatagrams:	0
ipInUnknownProtos:	500504	ipInDiscards:	0
ipInDelivers:	2334166	ipOutRequests:	1010542
ipOutDiscards:	4	ipOutNoRoutes:	4
ipReasmReqds:	0	ipReasmOKs:	0
ipReasmFails:	0	ipFragOKs:	0
ipFragFails:	0	ipFragCreates:	0
ipRoutingDiscards:	0	ipDefaultTTL:	255
ipReasmTimeout:	5		

/stats/icmp

ICMP Statistics

```

ICMP statistics:
icmpInMsgs:           245802  icmpInErrors:           1393
icmpInDestUnreaches:    41    icmpInTimeExcds:        0
icmpInParmProbs:        0     icmpInSrcQuenches:      0
icmpInRedirects:        0     icmpInEchos:            18
icmpInEchoReps:         244350 icmpInTimestamps:        0
icmpInTimestampReps:    0     icmpInAddrMasks:        0
icmpInAddrMaskReps:     0     icmpOutMsgs:            253810
icmpOutErrors:          0     icmpOutDestUnreaches:   15
icmpOutTimeExcds:       0     icmpOutParmProbs:       0
icmpOutSrcQuenches:     0     icmpOutRedirects:       0
icmpOutEchos:           253777 icmpOutEchoReps:         18
icmpOutTimestamps:      0     icmpOutTimestampReps:   0
icmpOutAddrMasks:       0     icmpOutAddrMaskReps:    0

```

/stats/tcp

TCP Statistics

```

TCP statistics:
tcpRtoAlgorithm:        4     tcpRtoMin:              0
tcpRtoMax:              240000 tcpMaxConn:              512
tcpActiveOpens:         252214 tcpPassiveOpens:         7
tcpAttemptFails:        528    tcpEstabResets:         4
tcpInSegs:              756401 tcpOutSegs:              756655
tcpRetransSegs:         0     tcpInErrs:              0
tcpCurBuff:             0     tcpCurConn:            3
tcpOutRsts:             417

```

/stats/udp

UDP Statistics

```

UDP statistics:
udpInDatagrams:         54     udpOutDatagrams:        43
udpInErrors:            0     udpNoPorts:            1578077

```

/stats/snmp

SNMP Statistics

SNMP statistics:			
snmpInPkts:	54	snmpInBadVersions:	0
snmpInBadC'tyNames:	0	snmpInBadC'tyUses:	0
snmpInASNParseErrs:	0	snmpEnableAuthTraps:	0
snmpOutPkts:	54	snmpInBadTypes:	0
snmpInTooBigs:	0	snmpInNoSuchNames:	0
snmpInBadValues:	0	snmpInReadOnlys:	0
snmpInGenErrs:	0	snmpInTotalReqVars:	105
snmpInTotalSetVars:	0	snmpInGetRequests:	2
snmpInGetNexts:	52	snmpInSetRequests:	0
snmpInGetResponses:	0	snmpInTraps:	0
snmpOutTooBigs:	0	snmpOutNoSuchNames:	2
snmpOutBadValues:	0	snmpOutReadOnlys:	0
snmpOutGenErrs:	0	snmpOutGetRequests:	0
snmpOutGetNexts:	0	snmpOutSetRequests:	0
snmpOutGetResponses:	54	snmpOutTraps:	0

/stats/fdb

FDB Statistics

```
FDB statistics:
creates:          30503   deletes:          30420
current:           83    hiwat:            855
lookups:         511889  lookup fails:     1126
finds:           21801   find fails:       0
find_or_c's:     36140   overflows:       0
```

This menu option enables you to display statistics regarding the use of the forwarding database, including the number of new entries, finds, and unsuccessful searches.

FDB statistics are described in the following table:

Table 5-12 Forwarding Database Statistics

Statistic	Description
creates	Number of entries created in the Forwarding Database.
current	Current number of entries in the Forwarding Database.
lookups	Number of entry lookups in the Forwarding Database.
finds	Number of successful searches in the Forwarding Database.
find_or_c's	Number of entries found or created in the Forwarding Database.
deletes	Number of entries deleted from the Forwarding Database.
hiwat	Highest number of entries in the Forwarding Database.
lookup fails	Number of unsuccessful searches made in the Forwarding Database.
find fails	Number of search failures in the Forwarding Database.
overflows	Number of entries overflowing the Forwarding Database.

/stats/route

Route Statistics

Route statistics:			
ipRoutesCur:	8	ipRoutesHighWater:	8
ipRoutesMax:	1024		
RIP statistics:			
ripInPkts:	0	ripOutPkts:	0
ripBadPkts:	0	ripRoutesAgedOut:	0
BGP statistics:			
bgpInPkts:	0	bgpOutPkts:	0
bgpBadPkts:	0	bgpSessFailures:	0
bgpRoutesAdded:	0	bgpRoutesRemoved:	0
bgpRoutesCur:	0	bgpRoutesFailed:	0
bgpRoutesIgnored:	0	bgpRoutesFiltered:	0

/stats/arp

ARP Statistics

ARP statistics:			
arpEntriesCur:	3	arpEntriesHighWater:	4
arpEntriesMax:	4096		

This menu option enables you to display Address Resolution Protocol statistics.

/stats/dns

DNS Statistics

DNS statistics:			
dnsInRequests:	0	dnsOutRequests:	0
dnsBadRequests:	0		

This menu option enables you to display Domain Name System statistics.

/stats/vrrp

VRRP Statistics

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) support on Alteon Web switches provides redundancy between routers in a LAN. This is accomplished by configuring the same virtual router IP address and ID number on each participating VRRP-capable routing device. One of the virtual routers is then elected as the master, based on a number of priority criteria, and assumes control of the shared virtual router IP address. If the master fails, one of the backup virtual routers will assume routing authority and take control of the virtual router IP address.

When virtual routers are configured, you can display the following protocol statistics for VRRP:

- Advertisements received (vrrpInAdvers)
- Advertisements transmitted (vrrpOutAdvers)
- Advertisements received, but ignored (vrrpBadAdvers)

The statistics for the VRRP LAN are displayed:

VRRP statistics:			
vrrpInAdvers:	0	vrrpBadAdvers:	0
vrrpOutAdvers:	0		

/stats/dump

Statistics Dump

Use the dump command to dump all switch statistics available from the Statistics Menu (40K or more, depending on your configuration). This data can be used in tuning and debugging switch performance.

If you want to capture dump data to a file, set your communication software on your workstation to capture session data prior to issuing the dump commands.



CHAPTER 6

The Configuration Menu

This chapter discusses how to use the Command Line Interface (CLI) for making, viewing, and saving switch configuration changes. Many of the commands, although not new, display more or different information than in the previous version. Important differences are called out in the text.

To make finding information easier, the menu options under the Server Load Balancing Menu (`/cfg/slb`) are in Chapter 7.

/cfg

Configuration Menu

```
[Configuration Menu]
sys      - System-wide Parameter Menu
port     - Port Menu
ip       - IP Menu
vlan     - VLAN Menu
stp      - Spanning Tree Menu
snmp     - SNMP Menu
mirr     - Port Mirroring Menu
slb      - Server Load Balancing Menu
trunk    - Trunk Group Menu
vrrp     - Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol Menu
bwm      - Bandwidth Management Menu
isd      - Integrated Service Director Menu
setup    - Step by step configuration set up
dump     - Dump current configuration to script file
ptcfg   - Backup current configuration to tftp server
gtcfg   - Restore current configuration from tftp server
```

Table 6-1 Configuration Menu Options (/cfg)

Command Syntax and Usage

sys

Displays the System Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 120](#).

port <port number (1-9)>

Displays the Port Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 129](#).

ip

Displays the IP Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 133](#).

vlan <VLAN number (1-4094)>

Displays the VLAN Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 150](#).

stp

Displays the Spanning Tree Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 152](#).

snmp

Displays the SNMP Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 156](#).

mirr

Displays the Mirroring Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see [page 158](#).

Table 6-1 Configuration Menu Options (/cfg)

Command Syntax and Usage	
slb	Displays the Server Load Balancing Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see Chapter 7 , “The SLB Configuration Menu”.
trunk <group number (1-4)>	Displays the Trunk Group Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see page 160 .
vrrp	Displays the Virtual Router Redundancy Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see page 161 .
bwm	Displays the Bandwidth Management Configuration Menu. To view menu options, see page 175 .
isd	Displays the iSD Menu. <i>This menu is used only for configuring an iSD100-SSL device (with SSL software version 1.0), which can be attached to your Web switch. If you do not have an iSD100-SSL device, disregard this menu and all submenus.</i> For details, see page 179 .
setup	Step-by-step configuration set-up of the switch. For details, see page 182 .
dump	Dumps current configuration to a script file. For details, see page 183 .
ptcfg <host name or IP address> <filename on host>	Backs up current configuration to TFTP server. For details, see page 183 .
gtcfg <host name or IP address> <filename on host>	Restores current configuration from TFTP server. For details, see page 184 .

Viewing, Applying, and Saving Changes

As you use the configuration menus to set switch parameters, the changes you make do not take effect immediately. All changes are considered “pending” until you explicitly apply them. Also, any changes are lost the next time the switch boots unless the changes are explicitly saved.

While configuration changes are in the pending state, you can do the following:

- View the pending changes
- Apply the pending changes
- Save the changes to flash memory

Viewing Pending Changes

You can view all pending configuration changes by entering **diff** at the menu prompt.

NOTE – The **diff** command is a global command. Therefore, you can enter **diff** at any prompt in the CLI.

Applying Pending Changes

To make your configuration changes active, you must apply them. To apply configuration changes, enter **apply** at any prompt in the CLI.

apply

NOTE – The **apply** command is a global command. Therefore, you can enter **apply** at any prompt in the administrative interface.

NOTE – All configuration changes take effect immediately when applied, except for starting Spanning Tree Protocol. To turn STP on or off, you must apply the changes, save them (see below), and then reset the switch (see [“Resetting the Web Switch” on page 251](#)).

Saving the Configuration

In addition to applying the configuration changes, you can save them to flash memory on the Web switch.

NOTE – If you do not save the changes, they will be lost the next time the system is rebooted.

To save the new configuration, enter the following command at any CLI prompt:

```
# save
```

When you save configuration changes, the changes are saved to the *active* configuration block. The configuration being replaced by the save is first copied to the *backup* configuration block. If you do not want the previous configuration block copied to the backup configuration block, enter the following instead:

```
# save n
```

You can decide which configuration you want to run the next time you reset the switch. Your options include:

- The active configuration block
- The backup configuration block
- Factory default configuration

You can view all pending configuration changes that have been applied but not saved to flash memory using the `diff flash` command. It is a global command that can be executed from any menu.

For instructions on selecting the configuration to run at the next system reset, see [“Selecting a Configuration Block” on page 251](#).

/cfg/sys

System Configuration

```
[System Menu]
  syslog - Syslog Menu
  sshd   - SSH Server Menu
  radius - RADIUS Authentication Menu
  ntp     - NTP Server Menu
  date    - Set system date
  time    - Set system time
  idle    - Set timeout for idle CLI sessions
  snmp    - Set SNMP access control
  wport   - Set Web responder port number
  bannr   - Set login banner
  mnet    - Set management network
  mmask   - Set management netmask
  smtp    - Set SMTP host
  tnet    - Enable/disable Telnet access
  bootp   - Enable/disable use of BOOTP
  http    - Enable/disable HTTP (Web) responder
  user    - User Access Control Menu (passwords)
  cur     - Display current system-wide parameters
```

This menu provides configuration of switch management parameters such as user and administrator privilege mode passwords, Web-based management settings, and management access list

Table 6-2 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys)

Command Syntax and Usage

syslog

Displays the Syslog Menu. To view menu options, see [page 122](#).

sshd

Displays the SSH Server Menu. To view menu options, see [page 123](#).

radius

Displays the RADIUS Authentication Menu. To view menu options, see [page 124](#).

ntp

Displays the Network Time Protocol (NTP) Server Menu. To view menu options, see [page 125](#).

date

Prompts the user for the system date.

Table 6-2 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys)

Command Syntax and Usage

time

Configures the system time using a 24-hour clock format.

idle *<idle timeout in minutes; affects both console and Telnet>*

Sets the idle timeout for CLI sessions, from 1 to 60 minutes. The default is 5 minutes.

snmp

Disables or provides read-only/write-read SNMP access.

wport *<TCP port number (1-65535)>*

Sets the switch port used for serving switch Web content. The default is HTTP port 80. If Global Server Load Balancing is to be used, set this to a different port (such as 8080).

banner *<string, maximum 80 characters>*

Configures a login banner of up to 80 characters. When a user or administrator logs into the switch, the login banner is displayed. It is also displayed as part of the output from the `/info/sys` command.

mnet *<IP subnet (such as 192.4.17.0)>*

Sets the base source IP address that allows access to switch management through Telnet, SNMP, RIP, or the Web OS browser-based interface. A range of IP addresses is produced when used with `mmask` (below). Specify an IP address in dotted-decimal notation.

mmask *<IP subnet mask (such as 255.255.0.0)>*

This IP address mask is used with `mnet` to set a range of source IP addresses allowed access to switch management functions. Specify the mask in dotted-decimal notation.

smtp *<SMTP host name or IP address>*

Sets the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) host, which is used for sending bandwidth management history information.

tnet

Enables or disables telnet access. This command is disabled by default. You will see this command only if you are connected to the switch through the console.

bootp disable|enable

Enables or disables the use of BOOTP. If you enable BOOTP, the switch will query its BOOTP server for all of the switch IP parameters. This command is disabled by default.

http disable|enable

Enables or disables HTTP (Web) access to the browser-based interface. It is disabled by default.

user

Displays the User Access Control Menu. To view menu options, see [page 127](#).

cur

Displays the current system parameters.

/cfg/sys/syslog

System Host Log Configuration

[Syslog Menu]	
host	- Set IP address of first syslog host
host2	- Set IP address of second syslog host
facil	- Set facility of first syslog host
facil2	- Set facility of second syslog host
console	- Enable or disable console output of syslog messages
cur	- Display current syslog settings

Table 6-3 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/syslog)

Command Syntax and Usage	
host	Sets the IP address of the first syslog host.
host2	Sets the IP address of the second syslog host.
facil <0-7>	Sets the facility of the first syslog host. This option sets the severity level of the syslog displayed.
facil2 <0-7>	Sets the facility of the second syslog host. This option sets the severity level of the syslog displayed.
console disable enable	Enables or disables delivering syslog messages to the console. When necessary, disabling console ensures the switch is not affected by syslog messages. It is enabled by default.
cur	Display the current syslog settings.

/cfg/sys/sshd

SSH Server Configuration

[SSHD Menu]
interval - Set Interval for generating the RSA server key
scpadm - Set SCP-only admin password
hkeygen - Generate the RSA host key
skeygen - Generate the RSA server key
ena - Enable the SCP apply and save
dis - Disable the SCP apply and save
on - Turn SSH server ON
off - Turn SSH server OFF
cur - Display current SSH server configuration

For Alteon AD3, AD4, 180e and 184 Web switches, this menu enables Secure Shell access from any SSH client. SSH scripts can be viewed by using the **/cfg/dump** command (see [page 183](#)).

NOTE – Except for **cur**, the commands of this menu are only accessible through the console port.

Table 6-4 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/sshd)

Command Syntax and Usage

interval	<i><number of hours (0-24)></i>
Sets the interval for automatically re-generating the RSA server key.	
scpadm	
Sets the SCP-only administrator password, up to 15 characters. The command will prompt for the required information.	
hkeygen	
Generates the RSA host key.	
skeygen	
Generates the RSA server key.	
ena	
Enables the SCP apply and save.	
dis	
Disables the SCP apply and save.	

Table 6-4 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/sshd)

Command Syntax and Usage	
on	Enables the SSH server.
off	Disables the SSH server.
cur	Displays the current SSH server configuration.

/cfg/sys/radius

RADIUS Server Configuration

[RADIUS Server Menu]	
prisrv	- Set primary RADIUS server address
secsrv	- Set secondary RADIUS server address
secret	- Set RADIUS secret
port	- Set RADIUS port
retries	- Set RADIUS server retries
timeout	- Set RADIUS server timeout
telnet	- Enable or disable RADIUS backdoor for telnet
on	- Turn RADIUS authentication ON
off	- Turn RADIUS authentication OFF
cur	- Display current RADIUS configuration

Table 6-5 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/radius)

Command Syntax and Usage	
prisrv <IP address>	Sets the primary RADIUS server address.
secsrv <IP address>	Sets the secondary RADIUS server address.
secret <1-32 character secret>	This is the shared secret between the switch and the RADIUS server(s).
port <RADIUS port>	Enter the number of the UDP port, between 1500 - 3000. The default is 1645.
retries <RADIUS server retries (1-3)>	Sets the number of failed authentication requests before switching to a different RADIUS server. The default is 3 requests.

Table 6-5 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/radius)

Command Syntax and Usage	
timeout	<RADIUS server timeout seconds (1-10)> Sets the amount of time, in seconds, before a RADIUS server authentication attempt is considered to have failed. The default is 3 seconds.
telnet disable enable	Enables or disables the RADIUS backdoor for telnet. telnet also applies to SSH/SCP connections.
on	Enables the RADIUS server.
off	Disables the RADIUS server.
cur	Displays the current RADIUS server parameters.

/cfg/sys/ntp

NTP Server Configuration

[NTP Server Menu]
server - Set NTP server address
interval - Set NTP server resync interval
tzzone - Set NTP timezone offset from GMT
dlight - Enable or disable NTP daylight savings time
on - Turn NTP service ON
off - Turn NTP service OFF
cur - Display current NTP configuration

This menu enables you to synchronize the switch clock to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. By default, this option is disabled.

Table 6-6 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/ntp)

Command Syntax and Usage	
server	<IP address> Specifies the IP address of the NTP server to which you want to synchronize the switch clock.
interval	<resync interval in minutes> Specifies the interval, that is, how often, in minutes (1-2880), to resynchronize the switch clock with the NTP server.

Table 6-6 System Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/sys/ntp)

Command Syntax and Usage	
tzzone <timezone offset, in hours>	Specifies the timezone offset, in hours, of the switch you are synchronizing from Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
dlight disable enable	Disables or enables daylight savings time in the system clock. When enabled, the switch will add an extra hour to the system clock so that it is consistent with the local clock. By default, this option is disabled.
on	Enables the NTP synchronization service.
off	Disables the NTP synchronization service.
cur	Displays the current NTP service settings.

/cfg/sys/user

User Access Control Configuration

[User Access Control Menu]

usrpw

- Set user password (user)

sopw

- Set SLB operator password (slboper)

l4opw

- Set L4 operator password (l4oper)

opw

- Set operator password (oper)

sapw

- Set Slb administrator password (slbadmin)

l4apw

- Set L4 administrator password (l4admin)

admpw

- Set administrator password (admin)

cur

- Display current user statistics

NOTE – Passwords can be a maximum of 15 characters.

Table 6-7 User Access Control Menu Options (/cfg/sys/user)

Command Syntax and Usage

usrpw

Sets the user (user) password. The user has no direct responsibility for switch management. He or she can view switch status information and statistics, but cannot make any configuration changes.

sopw

Sets the SLB operator (slboper) password. The SLB operator manages Web servers and other Internet services and their loads. He or she can view all switch information and statistics and can enable/disable servers using the Server Load Balancing configuration menus.

Access includes “user” functions.

l4opw

Sets the Layer 4 operator (l4oper) password. The Layer 4 operator manages traffic on the lines leading to the shared Internet services. He or she can view all switch information and statistics.

Access includes “slboper” functions.

opw

Sets the operator (oper) password. The operator password can have a maximum of 15 characters. The operator manages all functions of the switch. He or she can view all switch information and statistics and can reset ports or the entire switch.

Access includes “l4oper” functions.

Table 6-7 User Access Control Menu Options (/cfg/sys/user) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

sapw

Sets the SLB administrator (**slbadmin**) password. Administrator who configures and manages Web servers and other Internet services and their loads. He or she can view all switch information and statistics, but can configure changes only on the Server Load Balancing menus. Note that the Filter Menu options are not accessible to the SLB administrator.

Access includes “l4oper” functions.

l4apw

Sets the Layer 4 administrator (**l4admin**) password. The Layer 4 administrator configures and manages traffic on the lines leading to the shared Internet services. He or she can view all switch information and statistics and can configure parameters on the Server Load Balancing menus, with the exception of not being able to configure filters.

Access includes “slbadmin” functions.

admpw

Sets the administrator (**admin**) password. The superuser administrator has complete access to all menus, information, and configuration commands on the Web switch, including the ability to change both the user and administrator passwords.

Access includes “oper” and “l4admin” functions.

cur

Displays the current user status.

/cfg/port <port number>

Port Configuration

[Port 1 Menu]

fast

- Fast Phy Menu

gig

- Gig Phy Menu

pref

- Set preferred phy

back

- Set backup phy

pvid

- Set default port VLAN id

name

- Set port name

cont

- Set default port BW Contract

rmon

- Enable/Disable RMON for port

tag

- Enable or disable VLAN tagging for port

iponly

- Enable or disable allowing only IP related frames

ena

- Enable port

dis

- Disable port

cur

- Display current port configuration

The Port Menu enables you to configure settings for individual switch ports. This command is enabled by default.

Table 6-8 Port Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/port)

Command Syntax and Usage

fast

If a port is configured to support Fast Ethernet, this option displays the Fast Ethernet Physical Link Menu. To view menu options, see [page 131](#).

gig

If a port is configured to support Gigabit Ethernet, this option displays the Gigabit Ethernet Physical Link Menu. To view menu options, see [page 131](#).

pref

If dual physical connectors are available on the port, this option defines the preferred physical connector. Choices are:

- Fast Ethernet Port, RJ-45 connector
- Gigabit Ethernet Port, SC fiber connector (default)

back

If dual physical connectors are available on the port, this option defines the physical connector to use when the preferred choice fails or is unavailable. Choices are:

- Fast Ethernet Port, RJ-45 connector (default)
 - Gigabit Ethernet Port, SC fiber connector
 - None (By default)
-

Table 6-8 Port Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/port) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

pvid

Sets the default VLAN number which will be used to forward frames which are not VLAN tagged. The default number is 1.

name

Sets a name for the port. The assigned port name appears next to the port number on some information and statistics screens. The default is set to None.

cont <BWM Contract (1-256)>

Sets the default Bandwidth Management Contract for this port.

rmon disable|enable

Disables or enables RMON for this port. It is disabled by default.

tag disable|enable

Disables or enables VLAN tagging for this port. It is disabled by default.

iponly disable|enable

Disables or enables allowing only IP-related frames. It is disabled by default.

ena

Enables the port.

dis

Disables the port. (To temporarily disable a port without changing its configuration attributes, refer to [“Temporarily Disabling a Port” on page 132.](#))

cur

Displays current port parameters.

/cfg/port <port number> fast|gig

Port Link Configuration

[Fast Link Menu]	
speed	- Set link speed
mode	- Set full or half duplex mode
fctl	- Set flow control
auto	- Set autonegotiation
cur	- Display current fast link configuration

Use these menu options to set port parameters for the port link.

NOTE – Since the **speed** and **mode** parameters cannot be set for Gigabit Ethernet ports, these options do not appear on the Gigabit Link Menu.

Link menu options are described in [Table 6-9](#) and appear on the **fast** and **gig** port configuration menus for the Alteon Web switches. Using these configuration menus, you can set port parameters such as speed, flow control, and negotiation mode for the port link.

Table 6-9 Port Link Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/port <number> fast|gig)

Command Syntax and Usage

speed 10|100|1000|any (not all options are valid on all ports)

Sets the link speed. The choices include:

- “Any,” for automatic detection (default)
- 10 Mbps
- 100 Mbps
- 1000 Mbps

mode full|half|any

Sets the operating mode. This command is available only in the Fast Link Menu. The choices include:

- “Any,” for autonegotiation (default)
- Full-duplex
- Half-duplex

fctl rx|tx|both|none

Sets the flow control. This command is available only in the Fast Link Menu. The choices include:

- Autonegotiation (default)
- Receive flow control
- Transmit flow control
- Both receive and transmit flow control
- No flow control

Table 6-9 Port Link Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/port <number> fast|gig)

Command Syntax and Usage	
auto on off	Enables or disables autonegotiation for the port.
cur	Displays current port parameters.

Temporarily Disabling a Port

To temporarily disable a port without changing its stored configuration attributes, enter the following command at any prompt:

Main# /oper/port <port number>/dis

Because this configuration sets a temporary state for the port, you do not need to use **apply** or **save**. The port state will revert to its original configuration when the Web switch is reset. See the [“Operations Menu” on page 235](#) for other operations-level commands.

/cfg/ip

IP Configuration

[IP Menu]	
if	- Interface menu
gw	- Default gateway menu
route	- Static route menu
frwd	- Forwarding menu
rip1	- Routing Information Protocol menu
bgp	- Border Gateway Protocol menu
port	- IP port menu
dns	- Domain Name System menu
bootp	- Bootstrap Protocol Relay Menu
rearp	- Set re-ARP period in minutes
metrc	- Set default gateway metric
cur	- Display current IP configuration

Table 6-10 IP Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/ip)

Command Syntax and Usage

if <interface number (1-256)>	Displays the IP Interface Menu. To view menu options, see page 134 .
gw <default gateway number (1-4)>	Displays the IP Default Gateway Menu. To view menu options, see page 135 .
route	Displays the IP Static Route Menu. To view menu options, see page 137 .
frwd	Displays the IP Forwarding Menu. To view menu options, see page 138 .
rip1	Displays the Routing Interface Protocol Menu. To view menu options, see page 140 .
bgp	Displays the Border Gateway Protocol Menu. To view menu options, see page 141 .
port <port number (1-9)>	Displays the IP Port Menu. To view menu options, see page 146 .
dns	Displays the IP Domain Name System Menu. To view menu options, see page 147 .
bootp	Displays the Bootstrap Protocol Menu. To view menu options, see page 148 .

Table 6-10 IP Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/ip) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
rearp <2-120 minutes>	Sets the re-ARP period in minutes. The switch periodically sends ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) requests to refresh its address database. This command is used for setting the interval between ARP refreshes of the next IP address in the database. The default interval is 10 minutes.
metrc strict roundrobin	Sets the default gateway metric for strict or roundrobin . The default gateway metric is strict .
cur	Displays the current IP configuration.

/cfg/ip/if <interface number>

IP Interface Configuration

[IP Interface 1 Menu]	
addr	- Set IP address
mask	- Set subnet mask
broad	- Set broadcast address
vlan	- Set VLAN number
relay	- Enable or disable BOOTP relay
ena	- Enable interface
dis	- Disable interface
del	- Delete interface
cur	- Display current interface configuration

The Web switch can be configured with up to 256 IP interfaces. Each IP interface represents the Web switch on an IP subnet on your network. The Interface option is disabled by default.

Table 6-11 IP Interface Menu Options (/cfg/ip/if)

Command Syntax and Usage	
addr <IP address (such as 192.4.17.101)>	Configures the IP address of the switch interface using dotted decimal notation.
mask <IP subnet mask (such as 255.255.255.0)>	Configures the IP subnet address mask for the interface using dotted decimal notation.
broad <broadcast address (such as 192.4.17.255)>	Configures the IP broadcast address for the interface using dotted decimal notation.

Table 6-11 IP Interface Menu Options (/cfg/ip/if) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
vlan <VLAN number>	Configures the VLAN number for this interface. Each interface can belong to one VLAN, though any VLAN can have multiple IP interfaces in it.
relay	Enables or disables the BOOTP relay on this interface. It is enabled by default.
ena	Enables this IP interface.
dis	Disables this IP interface.
del	Removes this IP interface.
cur	Displays the current interface settings.

/cfg/ip/gw <gateway number>

Default IP Gateway Configuration

[Default gateway 1 Menu]
addr - Set IP address
intr - Set interval between ping attempts
retry - Set number of failed attempts to declare gateway DOWN
arp - Enable or disable ARP only health checks
ena - Enable default gateway
dis - Disable default gateway
del - Delete default gateway
cur - Display current default gateway configuration

The switch can be configured with up to four default IP gateways. This option is disabled by default.

Table 6-12 Default Gateway Options (/cfg/ip/gw)

Command Syntax and Usage	
addr <default gateway address>	Configures the IP address of the default IP gateway using dotted decimal notation.
intr <value (0-60 seconds)>	The switch pings the default gateway to verify that it's up. The intr option sets the time between health checks. The range is from 1 to 120 seconds. The default is 2 seconds.
retry <attempts (1-120)>	Sets the number of failed health check attempts required before declaring this default gateway inoperative. The range is from 1 to 120 attempts. The default is 8 attempts.
arp	Enables or disables ARP-only (Address Resolution Protocol) health checks. This command is disabled by default.
ena	Enables the gateway for use.
dis	Disables the gateway.
del	Deletes the gateway from the configuration.
cur	Displays the current gateway settings.

Default Gateway Metrics

For information about configuring which gateway is selected when multiple default gateways are enabled, see [page 149](#).

/cfg/ip/route

IP Static Route Configuration

[IP Static Route Menu]	
add	- Add static route
rem	- Remove static route
cur	- Display current static routes

Up to 128 static routes can be configured.

Table 6-13 IP Static Route Menu (/cfg/ip/route)

Command Syntax and Usage

add <destination> <mask> <gateway> <interface number>
Adds a static route. You will be prompted to enter a destination IP address, destination subnet mask, and gateway address. Enter all addresses using dotted decimal notation.
rem <destination>
Removes a static route. The destination address of the route to remove must be specified using dotted decimal notation.
cur
Displays the current IP static routes.

/cfg/ip/frwd

IP Forwarding Configuration

[IP Forwarding Menu]	
local	- Local network definition for route caching menu
dirbr	- Enable or disable forwarding directed broadcasts
on	- Globally turn IP Forwarding ON
off	- Globally turn IP Forwarding OFF
cur	- Display current IP Forwarding configuration

Table 6-14 IP Forwarding Options (/cfg/ip/frwd)

Command Syntax and Usage

local

Displays the menu used to define local network for route caching. Up to five local networks (lnets) can be configured. To view menu options, see [page 138](#).

dirbr

Enables or disables forwarding directed broadcasts. This command is disabled by default.

on

Enables IP forwarding (routing) on the Web switch.

off

Disables IP forwarding (routing) on the Web switch. Forwarding is turned off by default.

cur

Displays the current IP forwarding settings.

/cfg/ip/frwd/local

Local Network Route Caching Definition

[IP Local Networks Menu]	
add	- Add local network definition
rem	- Remove local network definition
cur	- Display current local network definitions

This menu is used for adding local networks by setting the local network address and netmask for the route cache, and to remove local networks.

Table 6-15 IP Local Network Options (/cfg/ip/frwd/local)

Command Syntax and Usage

add	<i><Local Network Address> <Local Network Mask></i> Adds a definition for a local network. For details, see “Defining IP Address Ranges for the Local Route Cache” below.
rem	Removes a definition for a local network
cur	Displays the current local network definitions.

Defining IP Address Ranges for the Local Route Cache

The Local Route Cache lets you use switch resources more efficiently, by reducing the size of the ARP table on the Web switch. The /cfg/ip/frwd/local/add parameters define a range of addresses that will be cached on the Web switch. The local network address is used to define the base IP address in the range which will be cached, and the local network mask is the mask which is applied to produce the range. To determine if a route should be added to the memory cache, the destination address is masked (bitwise AND) with the local network mask and checked against the local network address.

By default, the local network address and mask are both set to 0.0.0.0. This produces a range that includes all Internet addresses for route caching: 0.0.0.0 through 255.255.255.255.

Addresses to be cached are subnets that are directly connected for which there is an interface configured on the Web switch. To limit the route cache to your local hosts, you could configure the parameters as shown in the examples in the following table.

Table 6-16 Local Routing Cache Address Ranges

Local Host Address Range	Address	Mask
0.0.0.0 - 127.255.255.255	0.0.0.0	128.0.0.0
128.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	128.0.0.0	128.0.0.0
205.32.0.0 - 205.32.255.255	205.32.0.0	255.255.0.0

NOTE – All addresses that fall outside the defined range are forwarded to the default gateway. The default gateways must be within range.

/cfg/ip/rip1

Routing Information Protocol Configuration

[Routing Information Protocol Menu]	
updat	- Set update period in seconds
spply	- Enable or disable supplying route updates
lsten	- Enable or disable listening to route updates
deflt	- Enable or disable listening to default routes
statc	- Enable or disable supplying static routes
poisn	- Enable or disable poisoned reverse
on	- Globally turn RIP ON
off	- Globally turn RIP OFF
cur	- Display current RIP configuration

The RIP1 Menu is used for configuring Routing Information Protocol, version 1 parameters. This option is turned off by default.

NOTE – Do not configure RIP1 parameters if your routing equipment uses RIP version 2.

Table 6-17 Routing Information Protocol Menu (/cfg/ip/rip1)

Command Syntax and Usage

updat <update period (1-120 seconds)>

Sets the RIP update period in seconds. It is set at 30 seconds by default.

spply disable|enable

This command is disabled by default. When enabled, the switch supplies routes to other routers.

lsten disable|enable

This command is disabled by default. When enabled, the switch learns routes from other routers.

deflt none|lsten|spply|both

When enabled, the switch accepts RIP default routes from other routers and gives them priority over configured default gateways. When disabled, the switch rejects RIP default routes. This command is disabled by default.

statc

This command is disabled by default. When enabled, the switch supplies static routes.

poisn disable|enable

This command is disabled by default. When enabled, the switch uses split horizon with poisoned reverse. When disabled, the switch uses only split horizon.

on

Globally turns RIP ON.

Table 6-17 Routing Information Protocol Menu (/cfg/ip/rip1) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
off	Globally turns RIP OFF.
cur	Displays the current RIP configuration.

/cfg/ip/bgp

Border Gateway Protocol Configuration

[Border Gateway Protocol Menu]

- peer - Peer Menu
- filt - Filter Menu
- on - Globally turn BGP ON
- off - Globally turn BGP OFF
- cur - Display current BGP configuration

Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) is an Internet protocol that enables routers on a network to share routing information with each other and advertise information about the segments of the IP address space they can access within their network with routers on external networks. BGP allows you to decide what is the “best” route for a packet to take from your network to a destination on another network, rather than simply setting a default route from your border router(s) to your upstream provider(s). BGP is defined in RFC 1771.

The BGP Menu enables you to configure the switch to receive routes and to advertise static routes, fixed routes and virtual server IP addresses with other internal and external routers. In the current Web OS implementation, the Web switch does not advertise BGP routes that are learned from other BGP “speakers.”

The BGP menu option is turned off by default.

NOTE – Fixed routes are subnet routes. There is one fixed route per IP interface.

When multiple peers advertise the same route, we use the route with the shortest AS path as the preferred route if eBGP or use the local preference if iBGP.

Table 6-18 Border Gateway Protocol Menu (/cfg/ip/bgp)

Command Syntax and Usage	
peer <peer number (1 -4)>	Displays the menu used to configure each BGP <i>peer</i> . Each border router within an autonomous system that exchanges routing information with routers on other external networks. To view menu options, see page 143 .
filt <filter number (1-4)>	Displays the menu used to configure the range of IP destinations accepted by each BGP peer filter. To view menu options, see page 145 .
on	Globally turns BGP on.
off	Globally turns BGP off.
cur	Displays the current BGP configuration.

/cfg/ip/bgp/peer <peer number>

BGP Peer Configuration

[BGP Peer 1 Menu]
addr - Set remote IP address
ras - Set remote autonomous system number
if - Set local IP interface
las - Set local autonomous system number
hold - Set hold time
ttl - Set time-to-live of IP datagrams
metric - Set metric of advertised routes
fixed - Enable or disable advertising fixed routes
static - Enable or disable advertising static routes
vip - Enable or disable advertising VIP routes
ena - Enable peer
dis - Disable peer
del - Delete peer
cur - Display current peer configuration

This menu is used to configure BGP peers, which are border routers that exchange routing information with routers on internal and external networks. The peer option is disabled by default.

Table 6-19 BGP Peer Configuration Options (/cfg/ip/bgp/peer)

Command Syntax and Usage

addr <IP address (such as 192.4.17.101)>
Defines the IP address for the specified peer (border router), using dotted decimal notation. The default address is 0.0.0.0.

ras <AS number (0-65535)>
Sets the remote autonomous system number for the specified peer.

if <interface number (1-256)>
Selects a switch IP interface (between 1 and 256) for the specified peer. The default value is 1.

las <AS number (0-65535)>
Sets the local autonomous system number for the specified peer. It is set at 0 by default.

hold <hold time (0-65535)>
Sets the period of time, in seconds, that will elapse before the peer session is torn down because the switch hasn't received a "keep alive" message from the peer. It is set at 90 seconds by default.

Table 6-19 BGP Peer Configuration Options (/cfg/ip/bgp/peer) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
ttl <number of router hops (1-255)>	Specifies the number of router hops that the IP datagram can make. This value is used to restrict the number of “hops” the advertisement makes. It is also used to support multi-hops, which allow BGP peers to talk across a routed network. The default number is set at 1.
metric <metric (1-255)>	Sets the length of the AS path used when advertising eBGP routes. When advertising iBGP routes, this parameter sets the local preference. The default number is set at 1.
fixed disable enable	Enables or disables advertising fixed routes. This command is disabled by default.
static disable enable	Enables or disables advertising static routes. No default route is advertised. This command is disabled by default.
vip disable enable	Enables or disables advertising virtual server routes.
ena	Enables this peer configuration.
dis	Disables this peer configuration.
del	Deletes this peer configuration.
cur	Displays the current BGP peer configuration.

/cfg/ip/bgp/filt <filter number>

BGP Filter Configuration

[BGP Filter 1 Menu]	
addr	- Set filter address
mask	- Set filter mask
ena	- Enable filter
dis	- Disable filter
del	- Delete filter
cur	- Display current filter configuration

This menu enables you to configure filters that specify the routes/range of IP destinations a peer router will accept from other peers. A route must match a filter to be installed in the routing table. By default, the first filter is enabled and the rest of the filters are disabled.

Table 6-20 BGP Filter Configuration Options (/cfg/ip/bgp/filt)

Command Syntax and Usage

addr <IP address (such as 192.4.17.101)>
Defines the starting IP address for this filter, using dotted decimal notation. The default address is 0.0.0.0.
mask <IP address>
This IP address mask is used with addr to define the range of IP addresses that will be accepted by the peer when the filter is enabled. The default address is 0.0.0.0.
ena
Enables this BGP filter.
dis
Disables this BGP filter.
del
Deletes this BGP filter.
cur
Displays the current BGP filter configuration.

/cfg/ip/port <port number>

IP Port Configuration

[IP Forwarding Port 1 Menu]	
on	- Turn Forwarding ON
off	- Turn Forwarding OFF
cur	- Display current port configuration

The IP Port Menu allows you to turn IP forwarding on or off on a port-by-port basis. By default, the port forwarding option is turned on.

Table 6-21 IP Forwarding Port Options (/cfg/ip/port)

Command Syntax and Usage	
on	Enables IP forwarding for the current port.
off	Disables IP forwarding for the current port.
cur	Displays the current IP forwarding settings.

/cfg/ip/dns

Domain Name System Configuration

[Domain Name System Menu]	
prima	- Set IP address of primary DNS server
secon	- Set IP address of secondary DNS server
dname	- Set default domain name
cur	- Display current DNS configuration

The Domain Name System (DNS) Menu is used for defining the primary and secondary DNS servers on your local network, and for setting the default domain name served by the switch services. DNS parameters must be configured prior to using hostname parameters with the ping, traceroute, and tftp commands.

Table 6-22 Domain Name Service Menu Options (/cfg/ip/dns)

Command Syntax and Usage

prima	<IP address (such as 192.4.17.101)> You will be prompted to set the IP address for your primary DNS server. Use dotted decimal notation.
secon	<IP address (such as 192.4.17.101)> You will be prompted to set the IP address for your secondary DNS server. If the primary DNS server fails, the configured secondary will be used instead. Enter the IP address using dotted decimal notation.
dname	<dotted DNS notation> none Sets the default domain name used by the switch. For example: mycompany.com
cur	Displays the current Domain Name System settings.

/cfg/ip/bootp

Bootstrap Protocol Relay Configuration

[Bootstrap Protocol Relay Menu]	
addr	- Set IP address of BOOTP server
addr2	- Set IP address of second BOOTP server
on	- Globally turn BOOTP relay ON
off	- Globally turn BOOTP relay OFF
cur	- Display current BOOTP relay configuration

The Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) Relay Menu is used to allow hosts to obtain their configurations from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. The BOOTP configuration enables the switch to forward a client request for an IP address to two DHCP/BOOTP servers with IP addresses that have been configured on the Web switch.

BOOTP relay menu is turned off by default.

Table 6-23 Bootstrap Protocol Relay Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/ip/bootp)

Command Syntax and Usage	
addr <IP address>	Sets the IP address of the BOOTP server.
addr2 <IP address>	Sets the IP address of the second BOOTP server.
on	Globally turns on BOOTP relay.
off	Globally turns off BOOTP relay.
cur	Displays the current BOOTP relay configuration.

`/cfg/ip/metric` *<metric name>*

Default Gateway Metrics

If multiple default gateways are configured and enabled, a metric can be set to determine which primary gateway is selected. There are two metrics, which are described in the table below:

Table 6-24 Default Gateway Metrics (/cfg/ip/metric)

Option	Description
strict	The gateway number determines its level of preference. Gateway #1 acts as the preferred default IP gateway until it fails or is disabled, at which point the next in line will take over as the default IP gateway.
roundrobin	This provides basic gateway load balancing. The switch sends each new gateway request to the next healthy, enabled gateway in line. All gateway requests to the same destination IP address are resolved to the same gateway.

/cfg/vlan <VLAN number> VLAN Configuration

[VLAN 1 Menu]	
name	- Set VLAN name
cont	- Set BW contract
add	- Add port to VLAN
rem	- Remove port from VLAN
def	- Define VLAN as list of ports
jumbo	- Enable or disable Jumbo Frame support
ena	- Enable VLAN
dis	- Disable VLAN
del	- Delete VLAN
cur	- Display current VLAN configuration

The commands in this menu configure VLAN attributes, change the status of the VLAN, delete the VLAN, and change the port membership of the VLAN. For more information on configuring VLANs, see [“Setup Part 3: VLANs” on page 30](#).

By default, the VLAN menu option is disabled except VLAN 1, which is enabled all the time.

Table 6-25 VLAN Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/vlan)

Command Syntax and Usage

name <name to be assigned to the VLAN, maximum 32 characters>

Assigns a name to the VLAN or changes the existing name. The default VLAN name is the first one.

cont <BWM Contract (1-1024)>

Sets the Bandwidth Management contract for this VLAN. The default contract number is 256 on AD3 and 1024 on AD4.

add <port number>

Adds port(s) or trunk group(s) to the VLAN membership.

remove <port number>

Removes port(s) or trunk group(s) from this VLAN.

def

Defines which ports are members of this VLAN. Every port must be a member of at least one VLAN. By default, it defines ports between 1-9 for VLAN 1.

jumbo disable|enable

Enables or disables support for Jumbo Frame support on this VLAN. This feature is disabled by default.

Table 6-25 VLAN Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/vlan)

Command Syntax and Usage	
ena	Enables this VLAN.
dis	Disables this VLAN without removing it from the configuration.
del	Deletes this VLAN.
cur	Displays the current VLAN configuration.
NOTE – All ports must belong to at least one VLAN. Any port which is removed from a VLAN and which is not a member of any other VLAN is automatically added to default VLAN #1. You cannot remove a port from VLAN #1 if the port has no membership in any other VLAN. Also, you cannot add a port to more than one VLAN unless the port has VLAN tagging turned on (see the tag command on page 130).	

/cfg/stp

Spanning Tree Configuration

[Spanning Tree Group 1 Menu]

- brg - Bridge parameter menu
- port - Port parameter menu
- on - Globally turn Spanning Tree ON
- off - Globally turn Spanning Tree OFF
- cur - Display current bridge parameters

Web OS supports the IEEE 802.1d Spanning Tree Protocol (STP). STP is used to prevent loops in the network topology. This command is turned on by default.

NOTE – When VRRP is used for active/active redundancy, STP must be enabled.

Table 6-26 Spanning Tree Configuration Menu (/cfg/stp)

Command Syntax and Usage

brg	Displays the Bridge Spanning Tree Menu. To view menu options, see page 153 .
port <port number (1-9)>	Displays the Spanning Tree Port Menu. To view menu options, see page 155 .
on	Globally enables STP.
off	Globally disables STP.
cur	Displays current STP parameters.

/cfg/stp/brg

Bridge Spanning Tree Configuration

[Bridge Spanning Tree Menu]

prior

- Set bridge Priority [0-65535]

hello

- Set bridge Hello Time [1-10 secs]

mxage

- Set bridge Max Age (6-40 secs)

fwd

- Set bridge Forward Delay (4-30 secs)

aging

- Set bridge Aging Time (1-65535 secs, 0 to disable)

cur

- Display current bridge parameters

Spanning Tree bridge parameters affect the global STP operation of the switch. STP bridge parameters include:

- Bridge priority
- Bridge hello time
- Bridge maximum age
- Forwarding delay
- Bridge aging time

Table 6-27 Bridge Spanning Tree Menu Options (/cfg/stp/brg)

Command Syntax and Usage

prior <new bridge priority (0-65535)>
Configures the bridge priority. The bridge priority parameter controls which bridge on the network is the STP root bridge. To make this switch the root bridge, configure the bridge priority lower than all other switches and bridges on your network. The lower the value, the higher the bridge priority. The range is 0 to 65535, and the default is 32768

hello <new bridge hello time (1-10 secs)>
Configures the bridge hello time. The hello time specifies how often the root bridge transmits a configuration bridge protocol data unit (BPDU). Any bridge that is not the root bridge uses the root bridge hello value. The range is 1 to 10 seconds, and the default is 2 seconds.

mxage <new bridge max age (6-40 secs)>
Configures the bridge maximum age. The maximum age parameter specifies the maximum time the bridge waits without receiving a configuration bridge protocol data unit before it reconfigures the STP network. The range is 6 to 40 seconds, and the default is 20 seconds.

fwd <new bridge Forward Delay (4-30 secs)>
Configures the bridge forward delay parameter. The forward delay parameter specifies the amount of time that a bridge port has to wait before it changes from the listening state to the learning state and from the learning state to the forwarding state. The range is 4 to 30 seconds, and the default is 15 seconds.

Table 6-27 Bridge Spanning Tree Menu Options (/cfg/stp/brg) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
aging	<i><new bridge Aging Time (1-65535 secs, 0 to disable)></i> Configures the forwarding database aging time. The aging time specifies the amount of time the bridge waits without receiving a packet from a station before removing the station from the forwarding database. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds, and the default is 300 seconds. To disable aging, set this parameter to 0.
current	Displays the current bridge STP parameters.

When configuring STP bridge parameters, the following formulas must be used:

- $2*(fwd-1) \geq mxage$
- $2*(hello+1) \leq mxage$

/cfg/stp/port <port number>

Spanning Tree Port Configuration

[Spanning Tree Port 1 Menu]

prior	- Set port Priority (0-255)
cost	- Set port Path Cost (1-65535, 0 for default)
on	- Turn port's Spanning Tree ON
off	- Turn port's Spanning Tree OFF
cur	- Display current port Spanning Tree parameters

Spanning Tree port parameters are used to modify STP operation on an individual port basis. STP port parameters include:

- Port priority
- Port path cost

The **port** option of STP is turned on by default.

Table 6-28 Spanning Tree Port Menu (/cfg/stp/port)

Command Syntax and Usage

prior <new port Priority (0-255)>
Configures the port priority. The port priority helps determine which bridge port becomes the designated port. In a network topology that has multiple bridge ports connected to a single segment, the port with the lowest port priority becomes the designated port for the segment. The range is 0 to 255, and the default is 128.

cost <new port Path Cost (1-65535, 0 for default)>
Configures the port path cost. The port path cost is used to help determine the designated port for a segment. Generally speaking, the faster the port, the lower the path cost. The range is 1 to 65535. The default is 10 for 100Mbps ports, and 1 for gigabit ports. A value of 0 indicates that the default cost will be computed for an autonegotiated link speed.

on
Enables STP on the port.

off
Disables STP on the port.

cur
Displays the current STP port parameters.

/cfg/snmp

SNMP Configuration

```
[SNMP Menu]
name      - Set SNMP "sysName"
locn      - Set SNMP "sysLocation"
cont      - Set SNMP "sysContact"
rcomm     - Set SNMP read community string
wcomm     - Set SNMP write community string
trap1     - Set first SNMP trap host address
trap2     - Set second SNMP trap host address
t1comm    - Set community string for first trap host
t2comm    - Set community string for second trap host
auth      - Enable or disable SNMP "sysAuthenTrap"
linkt     - Enable or disable SNMP link up/down trap
cur       - Display current SNMP configuration
```

The Web OS software supports SNMP-based network management. If you are running an SNMP network management station on your network, you can manage the switch using the following standard SNMP MIBs:

- MIB II (RFC 1213)
- Ethernet MIB (RFC 1643)
- Bridge MIB (RFC 1493)

SNMP parameters that can be modified include:

- System name
- System location
- System contact
- Use of the SNMP system authentication trap function
- Read community string
- Write community string
- Trap hosts
- Trap community strings

Table 6-29 SNMP Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/snmp)

Command Syntax and Usage

name <new string, maximum 64 characters>

Configures the name for the system. The name can have a maximum of 64 characters.

locn <new string, maximum 64 characters>

Configures the name of the system location. The system location can have a maximum of 64 characters.

cont <new string, maximum 64 characters>

Configures the name of the system contact. The system contact can have a maximum of 64 characters.

rcomm <new SNMP read community string, maximum 32 characters>Configures the SNMP read community string. The read community string controls SNMP “get” access to the switch. It can have a maximum of 32 characters. The default read community string is *public*.**wcomm** <new SNMP write community string, maximum 32 characters>Configures the SNMP write community string. The write community string controls SNMP “set” and “get” access to the switch. It can have a maximum of 32 characters. The default write community string is *private*.**trap1** <new SNMP trap host IP address>

Configures the IP address of the first SNMP trap host using dotted decimal notation. The SNMP trap host is the device that receives SNMP trap messages from the switch.

trap2 <new SNMP trap host IP address>

Configures the IP address of the second SNMP trap host using dotted decimal notation.

t1com <new trap host community string, maximum 32 characters>Configures the community string for the first trap host. The default community string for the first trap host is *public*.**t2com** <new trap host community string, maximum 32 characters>Configures the community string for the second trap host. The default community string for the second trap host is *public*.**auth disable|enable**

Enables or disables the use of the system authentication trap facility. The default setting is disabled.

Table 6-29 SNMP Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/snmp) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
linkt <port> [disable enable]	Enables or disables the sending of SNMP link up and link down traps. The default setting is enabled.
cur	Displays the current STP port parameters.

/cfg/mirr

Port Mirroring Menu

[Mirroring Menu]	
port	- Port Mirroring Menu

Port mirroring is disabled by default.

/cfg/mirr/port

Port Mirroring Configuration

[Port Mirroring Menu]	
to	- Set "Monitoring" port
from	- Set "Mirrored" port
dir	- Set Direction [in, out, both]
tmout	- Set Mirroring Timeout value in seconds
ena	- Enable Port Mirroring
dis	- Disable Port Mirroring
cur	- Display current Port Mirroring configuration

NOTE – Port mirroring menu options are supported only to the Alteon AD4 and Alteon 184 Web switches.

The Port Mirroring Menu is used to configure, enable, and disable the port monitor. When enabled, network packets being sent and/or received on a target port are duplicated and sent to a monitor port. By attaching a network analyzer to the monitor port, you can collect detailed information about your network performance and usage.

There can be a total of four mirroring selectors. One of these selectors will be used to configure both address and non address-based mirroring selection criteria, and the other three selectors will be used only for non address-based ones. The address-based selection criteria allows user to specify MAC destinationA, MAC SA, IP DA, and/or IP SA, in addition to in-port, out-port, in-VLAN ID, and/or COS. The maximum number of configurable monitoring ports is 2.

NOTE – Port Mirroring cannot be used simultaneously with Layer 4 services (Server Load Balancing or Application Redirection) on any switch port connected to a server either directly, or through another switch or hub.

For Server Load Balancing, this applies to any switch port configured in the “server” state. For Application Redirection, this applies to any switch port that has a cache server attached to it directly or indirectly. Use your network analyzer with a full-duplex pass-through connection or an Ethernet hub when troubleshooting a switch port for a server used for Layer 4 services.

Table 6-30 Port Mirroring Options (/cfg/mirr/port)

Command Syntax and Usage	
to <port number where monitoring station is located>	This defines the monitoring port. When port mirroring is enabled, packets received and/or transmitted by the mirrored port will be duplicated to the switch port specified in this command.
from <input port to be mirrored>	This defines the mirrored port. When port mirroring is enabled, packets received and/or sent by the port specified in this command will be sent to the monitor port.
dir	This determines which type of packets will be sent to the monitor port: in = packets received at the mirrored port out = packets sent from the mirrored port both = packets sent and received by the mirrored port. The default setting is both.
tmout <seconds after which mirroring gets disabled (1-86400, 0 for no timeout)>	Port mirroring will be automatically disabled (regardless of port state) after the time-out period specified in this command. Valid times are from 0 (does not time-out and which is also the default value) to 86400 seconds.
dis	Turns port mirroring off.
ena	Turns port mirroring on.

Table 6-30 Port Mirroring Options (/cfg/mirr/port) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
cur	Displays the current parameter settings.

/cfg/trunk <trunk group number> Trunk Configuration

[Trunk group 1 Menu]	
cont	- Set BW contract for this trunk group
add	- Add port to trunk group
rem	- Remove port from trunk group
ena	- Enable trunk group
dis	- Disable trunk group
del	- Delete trunk group
cur	- Display current Trunk Group configuration

Trunk groups can provide super-bandwidth connections between Alteon Web switches or other trunk capable devices. A *trunk* is a group of ports that act together, combining their bandwidth to create a single, larger port. Up to four trunk groups can be configured on the Web switch, with the following restrictions:

- Any physical switch port can belong to no more than one trunk group.
- Up to four ports can belong to the same trunk group.
- Best performance is achieved when all ports in a trunk are configured for the same speed.
- Trunking from non-Alteon devices must comply with Cisco® EtherChannel® technology.

By default, the trunk group is empty and disabled.

Table 6-31 Trunk Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/trunk)

Command Syntax and Usage	
cont <BWM Contract (1-1024)>	Sets the default Bandwidth Management Contract for this trunk group. By default, the contract number is 256 for AD3 and 1024 for AD4.
add <port number (1-9)>	Adds a physical port to the current trunk group.
rem <port number (1-9)>	Removes a physical port from the current trunk group.

Table 6-31 Trunk Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/trunk) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
ena	Enables the current trunk group.
dis	Turns the current trunk group off.
del	Removes the current trunk group configuration.
cur	Displays current trunk group parameters.

/cfg/vrrp

VRRP Configuration

```
[Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol Menu]
vr      - VRRP Virtual Router menu
group   - VRRP Virtual Router Group menu
if      - VRRP Interface menu
track   - VRRP Priority Tracking menu
hotstan - Enable or disable hot-standby processing
on      - Globally turn VRRP ON
off     - Globally turn VRRP OFF
cur     - Display current VRRP configuration
```

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) support on Alteon Web switches provides redundancy between routers in a LAN. This is accomplished by configuring the same virtual router IP address and ID number on each participating VRRP-capable routing device. One of the virtual routers is then elected as the master, based on a number of priority criteria, and assumes control of the shared virtual router IP address. If the master fails, one of the backup virtual routers will assume routing authority and take control of the virtual router IP address.

By default, VRRP is disabled. Alteon WebSystems has extended VRRP to include virtual servers as well, allowing for full active/active redundancy between its Layer 4 switches. For more information on VRRP, see the “High Availability” chapter in the *Web OS 9.0 Application Guide*.

Table 6-32 Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol Options (/cfg/vrrp)

Command Syntax and Usage	
vr <virtual router number (1-256)>	Displays the VRRP Virtual Router Menu. This menu is used for configuring up to 256 virtual routers on this switch. To view menu options, see page 163 .
group	Displays the VRRP virtual router group menu, used to combine all virtual routers together as one logical entity. Group options must be configured when using two or more Alteon switches in a hot-standby failover configuration where only one switch is active at any given time. To view menu options, see page 167 .
if <interface number (1-256)>	Displays the VRRP Virtual Router Interface Menu. To view menu options, see page 171 .
track <interface number (1-256)>	Displays the VRRP Tracking Menu. This menu is used for weighting the criteria used when modifying priority levels in the master router election process. To view menu options, see page 173 .
hotstan disable enable	Enables or disables hot standby processing, in which two or more switches provide redundancy for each other. By default, this option is disabled.
on	Globally enables VRRP on this switch.
off	Globally disables VRRP on this switch.
cur	Displays the current VRRP parameters.

/cfg/vrrp/vr <router number>

Virtual Router Configuration

[VRRP Virtual Router 1 Menu]

track

- Priority Tracking Menu

vrid

- Set virtual router ID

addr

- Set IP address

if

- Set interface number

prio

- Set renter priority

adver

- Set advertisement interval

preem

- Enable or disable preemption

share

- Enable or disable sharing

ena

- Enable virtual router

dis

- Disable virtual router

del

- Delete virtual router

cur

- Display current VRRP virtual router configuration

This menu is used for configuring up to 256 virtual routers for this switch. A virtual router is defined by its virtual router ID and an IP address. On each VRRP-capable routing device participating in redundancy for this virtual router, a virtual router will be configured to share the same virtual router ID and IP address.

Virtual routers are disabled by default.

Table 6-33 VRRP Virtual Router Options (/cfg/vrrp/vr)

Command Syntax and Usage

track

Displays the VRRP Priority Tracking Menu for this virtual router. Tracking is an Alteon Web-Systems proprietary extension to VRRP, used for modifying the standard priority system used for electing the master router. Tracking is not needed if sharing (**share**) is enabled. To view menu options, see [page 165](#).

vrid <virtual router ID (1-255)>

Defines the virtual router ID. This is used in conjunction with **addr** (below) to define a virtual router on this switch. To create a pool of VRRP-enabled routing devices which can provide redundancy to each other, each participating VRRP device must be configured with the same virtual router: one that shares the same **vrid** and **addr** combination.

The **vrid** for standard virtual routers (where the virtual router IP address is not the same as any virtual server) can be any integer between 1 and 255. The default value is 1.

All **vrid** values must be unique within the VLAN to which the virtual router's IP interface belongs.

Table 6-33 VRRP Virtual Router Options (/cfg/vrrp/vr) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

addr <IP address>

Defines the IP address for this virtual router using dotted decimal notation. This is used in conjunction with the **vr id** (above) to configure the same virtual router on each participating VRRP device. The default address is 0.0.0.0.

if <interface number (1-256)>

Selects a switch IP interface (between 1 and 256). If the IP interface has the same IP address as the **addr** option above, this switch is considered the “owner” of the defined virtual router. An owner has a special priority of 255 (highest) and will always assume the role of master router, even if it must preempt another virtual router which has assumed master routing authority. This preemption occurs even if the **preem** option below is disabled. The default value is 1.

prio <priority (1-254)>

Defines the election priority bias for this virtual server. This can be any integer between 1 and 254. The default value is 100.

During the master router election process, the routing device with the highest virtual router priority number wins. If there is a tie, the device with the highest IP interface address wins. If this virtual router’s IP address (**addr**) is the same as the one used by the IP interface, the priority for this virtual router will automatically be set to 255 (highest).

When priority tracking is used (/cfg/vrrp/track or /cfg/vrrp/vr #/track), this base priority value can be modified according to a number of performance and operational criteria.

adver <seconds (1-255)>

Defines the time interval between VRRP master advertisements. This can be any integer between 1 and 255 seconds. The default value is 1.

preem disable|enable

Enables or disables master preemption. When enabled, if this virtual router is in backup mode but has a higher priority than the current master, this virtual router will preempt the lower priority master and assume control. Note that even when **preem** is disabled, this virtual router will always preempt any other master if this switch is the owner (the IP interface address and virtual router **addr** are the same). By default, this option is enabled.

share disable|enable

Enables or disables virtual router sharing, an Alteon WebSystems proprietary extension to VRRP. When enabled, this switch will process any traffic addressed to this virtual router, even when in backup mode. By default, this option is enabled.

ena

Enables this virtual router.

dis

Disables this virtual router.

Table 6-33 VRRP Virtual Router Options (/cfg/vrrp/vr) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
del	Deletes this virtual router from the switch configuration.
cur	Displays the current configuration information for this virtual router.

/cfg/vrrp/vr <router number>/track
Virtual Router Priority Tracking Configuration

[VRRP Virtual Router 1 Priority Tracking Menu]

vrs	- Enable/disable tracking master virtual routers
ifs	- Enable/disable tracking other interfaces
ports	- Enable/disable tracking VLAN switch ports
l4pts	- Enable/disable tracking L4 switch ports
reals	- Enable/disable tracking L4 real servers
hsrp	- Enable/disable tracking HSRP
hsrv	- Enable/disable tracking HSRP by VLAN
cur	- Display current VRRP virtual router configuration

This menu is used for modifying the priority system used when electing the master router from a pool of virtual routers. Various tracking criteria can be used to bias the election results. Each time one of the tracking criteria is met, the priority level for the virtual router is increased by an amount defined through the VRRP Tracking Menu (see [page 173](#)).

Criteria are tracked dynamically, continuously updating virtual router priority levels when enabled. If the virtual router preemption option (see **preem** in [Table 6-33 on page 163](#)) is enabled, this virtual router can assume master routing authority when its priority level rises above that of the current master.

Some tracking criteria (`vrs`, `ifs`, and `ports` below) apply to standard virtual routers, otherwise called “virtual interface routers.” Other tracking criteria (`l4pts`, `reals`, and `hsrp`) apply to “virtual server routers,” which perform Layer 4 Server Load Balancing functions. A virtual server router is defined as any virtual router whose IP address (`addr`) is the same as any configured virtual server IP address.

Table 6-34 VRRP Priority Tracking Options (`/cfg/vrrp/vr #/track`)

Command Syntax and Usage

`vrs disable|enable`

When enabled, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each virtual router in master mode on this switch. This is useful for making sure that traffic for any particular client/server pairing are handled by the same switch, increasing routing and load balancing efficiency. This command is disabled by default.

`ifs disable|enable`

When enabled, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each other IP interface active on this switch. An IP interface is considered active when there is at least one active port on the same VLAN. This helps elect the virtual routers with the most available routes as the master. This command is disabled by default.

`ports disable|enable`

When enabled, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each active port on the same VLAN. A port is considered “active” if it has a link and is forwarding traffic. This helps elect the virtual routers with the most available ports as the master. This command is disabled by default.

`l4pts disable|enable`

When enabled for virtual server routers, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each physical switch port which has active Layer 4 processing on this switch. This helps elect the main Layer 4 switch as the master. This command is disabled by default.

`reals disable|enable`

When enabled for virtual server routers, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each healthy real server behind the virtual server IP address of the same IP address as the virtual router on this switch. This helps elect the switch with the largest server pool as the master, increasing Layer 4 efficiency. This command is disabled by default.

`hsrp disable|enable` *<priority (1-254)>*

Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) is used with some types of routers for establishing router failover. In networks where HSRP is used, enable this switch option to increase the priority of this virtual router for each Layer 4 client-only port that receives HSRP advertisements. Enabling HSRP helps elect the switch closest to the master HSRP router as the master, optimizing routing efficiency. This command is disabled by default.

Table 6-34 VRRP Priority Tracking Options (/cfg/vrrp/vr #/track) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
hsrv disable enable	Hot Standby Router on VLAN (HSRV) is used to work in VLAN-tagged environments. Enable this switch option to increment only that vrrp instance that is on the <i>same</i> VLAN as the tagged hsrp master flagged packet. This command is disabled by default.
cur	Displays the current configuration for priority tracking for this virtual router.

/cfg/vrrp/group

Virtual Router Group Configuration

[VRRP Virtual Router Group Menu]	
track	- Priority Tracking Menu
vrid	- Set virtual router ID
if	- Set interface number
prio	- Set renter priority
adver	- Set advertisement interval
preem	- Enable or disable preemption
share	- Enable or disable sharing
ena	- Enable virtual router
dis	- Disable virtual router
del	- Delete virtual router
cur	- Display current VRRP virtual router configuration

The Virtual Router Group menu is used for associating all virtual routers into a single logical virtual router, which forces all virtual routers on the Web switch to either be master or backup as a group. A virtual router is defined by its virtual router ID and an IP address. On each VRRP-capable routing device participating in redundancy for this virtual router, a virtual router will be configured to share the same virtual router ID and IP address.

NOTE – This option is required to be configured only when using at least two Alteon Web switches in a hot-standby failover configuration, where only one switch is active at any given time.

Table 6-35 VRRP Virtual Router Group Options (/cfg/vrrp/group)

Command Syntax and Usage

track

Displays the VRRP Priority Tracking Menu for the virtual router group. Tracking is an Alteon WebSystems proprietary extension to VRRP, used for modifying the standard priority system used for electing the master router. Tracking is not needed if sharing (**share**) is enabled.

To view menu options, see [page 173](#).

vrid <virtual router ID (1-255)>

Defines the virtual router ID.

The **vrid** for standard virtual routers (where the virtual router IP address is not the same as any virtual server) can be any integer between 1 and 255. All **vrid** values must be unique within the VLAN to which the virtual router's IP interface (see **if** below) belongs. The default virtual router ID is 1.

if <interface number (1-256)>

Selects a switch IP interface (between 1 and 256). The default switch IP interface number is 1.

prio <priority (1-254)>

Defines the election priority bias for this virtual router group. This can be any integer between 1 and 254. The default value is 100.

During the master router election process, the routing device with the highest virtual router priority number wins. If there is a tie, the device with the highest IP interface address wins. If this virtual router's IP address (**addr**) is the same as the one used by the IP interface, the priority for this virtual router will automatically be set to 255 (highest).

When priority tracking is used (/cfg/vrrp/track or /cfg/vrrp/vr #/track), this base priority value can be modified according to a number of performance and operational criteria.

adver <1-255 seconds>

Defines the time interval between VRRP master advertisements. This can be any integer between 1 and 255 seconds. The default is 1.

preem disable|enable

Enables or disables master preemption. When enabled, if the virtual router group is in backup mode but has a higher priority than the current master, this virtual router will preempt the lower priority master and assume control. Note that even when **preem** is disabled, this virtual router will always preempt any other master if this switch is the owner (the IP interface address and virtual router **addr** are the same). By default, this option is enabled.

share disable|enable

Enables or disables virtual router sharing, an Alteon WebSystems proprietary extension to VRRP. When enabled, this switch will process any traffic addressed to this virtual router, even when in backup mode. By default, this option is enabled.

Table 6-35 VRRP Virtual Router Group Options (/cfg/vrrp/group) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
ena	Enables the virtual router group.
dis	Disables the virtual router group.
del	Deletes the virtual router group from the switch configuration.
cur	Displays the current configuration information for the virtual router group.

/cfg/vrrp/group/track

Virtual Router Group Priority Tracking Configuration

[Virtual Router Group Priority Tracking Menu]	
vrs	- Enable/disable tracking master virtual routers
ifs	- Enable/disable tracking other interfaces
ports	- Enable/disable tracking VLAN switch ports
l4pts	- Enable/disable tracking L4 switch ports
reals	- Enable/disable tracking L4 real servers
hsrp	- Enable/disable tracking HSRP
hsrv	- Enable/disable tracking HSRP by VLAN
cur	- Display current VRRP Group Tracking configuration

NOTE – If *Virtual Router Group Tracking* is enabled, then the tracking option will be available only under *group* option. The tracking setting for the other individual virtual routers will be ignored.

Table 6-36 Virtual Router Group Priority Tracking Options (/cfg/vr/group/track)

Command Syntax and Usage

vrs disable|enable

When enabled, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each virtual router in master mode on this switch. This is useful for making sure that traffic for any particular client/server pairing are handled by the same switch, increasing routing and load balancing efficiency. This command is disabled by default.

ifs disable|enable

When enabled, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each other IP interface active on this switch. An IP interface is considered active when there is at least one active port on the same VLAN. This helps elect the virtual routers with the most available routes as the master. This command is disabled by default.

ports disable|enable

When enabled, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each active port on the same VLAN. A port is considered “active” if it has a link and is forwarding traffic. This helps elect the virtual routers with the most available ports as the master. This command is disabled by default.

l4pts disable|enable

When enabled for virtual server routers, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each physical switch port which has active Layer 4 processing on this switch. This helps elect the main Layer 4 switch as the master. This command is disabled by default.

Table 6-36 Virtual Router Group Priority Tracking Options (/cfg/vr/group/track)

Command Syntax and Usage	
reals disable enable	When enabled for virtual server routers, the priority for this virtual router will be increased for each healthy real server. This helps elect the switch with the largest server pool as the master, increasing Layer 4 efficiency. This command is disabled by default.
hsrp disable enable	Enables Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) for this virtual router group. HSRP is used with some types of routers for establishing router failover. In networks where HSRP is used, enable this switch option to increase the priority of this virtual router for each Layer 4 client-only port that receives HSRP advertisements. This helps elect the switch closest to the master HSRP router as the master, optimizing routing efficiency. This command is disabled by default.
hsrv disable enable	Hot Standby Router on VLAN (HSRV) is used to work in VLAN-tagged environments. Enable this switch option to increment only that vrrp instance that is on the <i>same</i> VLAN as the tagged hsrp master flagged packet. This command is disabled by default.
cur	Displays the current configuration for priority tracking for this virtual router.

/cfg/vrrp/if <interface number>

VRRP Interface Configuration

NOTE – The *interface-number* (1 to 256) represents the IP interface on which authentication parameters must be configured.

[VRRP Interface 1 Menu]	
auth	- Set authentication types
passw	- Set plain-text password
del	- Delete interface
cur	- Display current VRRP interface configuration

This menu is used for configuring VRRP authentication parameters for the IP interfaces used with the virtual routers.

Table 6-37 VRRP Interface Options (/cfg/vrrp/if)

Command Syntax and Usage	
auth none password	Defines the type of authentication that will be used: none (no authentication), or password (password authentication).
passw <key>	Defines a plain text password up to eight characters long. This password will be added to each VRRP packet transmitted by this interface when password authentication is chosen (see auth above).
del	Clears the authentication configuration parameters for this IP interface. The IP interface itself is not deleted.
cur	Displays the current configuration for this IP interface’s authentication parameters.

/cfg/vrrp/track

VRRP Tracking Configuration

[VRRP Tracking Menu]

```

vrs      - Set priority increment for virtual router tracking
ifs      - Set priority increment for IP interface tracking
ports    - Set priority increment for VLAN switch port tracking
l4pts    - Set priority increment for L4 switch port tracking
reals    - Set priority increment for L4 real server tracking
hsrp     - Set priority increment for HSRP tracking
hsrv     - Set priority increment for HSRP by VLAN tracking
cur      - Display current VRRP Priority Tracking configuration

```

This menu is used for setting weights for the various criteria used to modify priority levels during the master router election process. Each time one of the tracking criteria is met (see “VRRP Virtual Router Priority Tracking Menu” on [page 165](#)), the priority level for the virtual router is increased by an amount defined through this menu.

Table 6-38 VRRP Tracking Options (/cfg/vrrp/track)

Command Syntax and Usage

vrs <0-254>

Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for virtual routers in master mode detected on this switch. The default value is 2.

ifs <0-254>

Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for active IP interfaces detected on this switch. The default value is 2.

ports <0-254>

Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for active ports on the virtual router’s VLAN. The default value is 2.

l4pts <0-254>

Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for physical switch ports with active Layer 4 processing. The default value is 2.

reals <0-254>

Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for healthy real servers behind the virtual server router. The default value is 2.

hsrp <0-254>

Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for switch ports with Layer 4 client-only processing that receive HSRP broadcasts. The default value is 10.

Table 6-38 VRRP Tracking Options (/cfg/vrrp/track) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
hsrv <0-254>	Defines the priority increment value (1 through 254) for vrrp instances that are on the same VLAN. The default value is 10.
cur	Displays the current configuration of priority tracking increment values.
NOTE – These priority tracking options only define increment values. These options do not affect the VRRP master router election process until options under the VRRP Virtual Router Priority Tracking Menu (see page 165) are enabled.	

/cfg/bwm

Bandwidth Management Configuration

[Bandwidth Management Menu]

cont

- Contract Menu

policy

- Policy Menu

user

- Set SMTP server user name

force

- Enable or disable enforce policies

on

- Globally turn Bandwidth Management processing ON

off

- Globally turn Bandwidth Management processing OFF

cur

- Display current Bandwidth Management configuration

By default, BWM is turned off.

NOTE – Up to 1024 bandwidth management contracts can be configured on the Alteon AD4 and Alteon 184 Web switches.

Table 6-39 Bandwidth Management Options (/cfg/bwm)

Command Syntax and Usage

cont <contract number (1-1024)>
Displays the Bandwidth Management Contract Menu. By default, this option is disabled. To view menu options, see [page 176](#).

policy <policy number (1-64)>
Displays the Bandwidth Management Policy Menu. To view menu options, see [page 177](#).

user <user name>
Sets the SMTP user name to whom the history statistics will be mailed. The default is set to None.

force disable|enable
Enables or disables enforces policies. When disabled, no bandwidth limits will be applied on queues. By default, this option is enabled.

on
Globally enables Bandwidth Management on this switch.

off
Globally disables Bandwidth Management on this switch.

cur
Displays the current Bandwidth Management configuration.

/cfg/bwm/cont *<contract number>*

Bandwidth Management Contract Configuration

[BW Contract 1 Menu]	
name	- Set Contract name
policy	- Set Contract Policy
prec	- Set Contract Precedence
history	- Enable/disable Saving Contract stats history
wtos	- Enable/disable overwriting IP TOS for this Contract
ena	- Enable BW Contract
dis	- Disable BW Contract
del	- Delete BW Contract
cur	- Display current BW Contract configuration

Table 6-40 Bandwidth Management Policy Menu Options (/cfg/bwm/cont)

Command Syntax and Usage

name <i><15 character name></i>	Sets the name for this Bandwidth Management contract.
policy <i><bandwidth policy number (1-64)></i>	Sets the policy number for this Bandwidth Management contract. The default policy number is 64.
prec <i><bandwidth precedence value (1-255)></i>	Sets the precedence value for this Bandwidth Management contract. The default precedence value is 1.
history disable enable	Disables or enables saving statistics for this contract on the server. By default, it is enabled.
wtos disable enable	Disables or enables overwriting the IP Type of Service (TOS) for this contract. By default, it is disabled.
ena	Enables this Bandwidth Management contract.
dis	Disables this Bandwidth Management contract.
del	Removes this contract from the switch.
cur	Displays the current Bandwidth Management contract configuration.

`/cfg/bwm/pol` *<policy number>*

Bandwidth Management Policy Configuration

[Policy 1 Menu]

hard

- Set hard Limit

soft

- Set soft Limit

resv

- Set Reservation Limit

utos

- Set underlimit (soft limit) TOS

otos

- Set overlimit (soft limit) TOS

buffer

- Set Buffer Limit

cur

- Display current Policy configuration

Table 6-41 Bandwidth Management Policy Menu Options (`/cfg/bwm/pol`)

Command Syntax and Usage

hard *<250K-5000K|1M-1000M>*
Sets the hard bandwidth limit for this policy. This is the highest amount of bandwidth available to this policy. The default value is 2000 kbps.

soft *<250K-5000K|1M-1000M>*
Sets the soft bandwidth limit for this policy. The default value is 1000 kbps.

resv *< 250K-5000K|1M-1000M>*
Sets the reserve limit for this policy. This is the amount of bandwidth always available to this policy. The default value is 500Kbytes.

utos *<BW Policy TOS (0-255)>*
Sets the new `utos` value to overwrite the original TOS value if the traffic for this contract is under the soft limit. With this option set to the default value of “0,” the switch will not overwrite the TOS value.

otos *<BW Policy TOS (0-255)>*
Sets the new `otos` value to overwrite the original TOS value if the traffic for this contract is over the soft limit. With this option set to the default value of “0,” the switch will not overwrite the TOS value.

buffer *<Maximum buffer space (bytes) (8192-512000)>*
Sets the buffer limit for this policy. The default value is 8192 bytes.

cur
Displays the current bandwidth policy configuration.

/cfg/bwm/cur

Bandwidth Management Current Configuration

Current Bandwidth Management setting: ON

Policy Enforcement: enabled

SMTP server user name:

Contract	Name	Policy	Prec	Hist	TOS	State
4		4	4	E	D	E
6		4	6	E	D	E
256	Default	--	0	E	D	E

*Default contract gets all the BW that is available on a port after the active contracts reserved BW is taken.

Policy	Hard	Soft	Resv	oTOS	uTOS	Buffer
1	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
2	40m	35m	30m	0	0	32640
3	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
4	10m	9m	8m	0	0	32640
5	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
6	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
7	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
8	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
9	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
10	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
11	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
12	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
13	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
14	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
15	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
16	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
17	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
18	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
19	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
20	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
21	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
22	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
23	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
24	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
25	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
26	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
27	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
28	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
29	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	32640
30	2000k	1000k	500k	0	0	3264

/cfg/isd

iSD Menu

The iSD Menu is used for setting basic parameters for all iSD100-SSL devices.

NOTE – This menu is used only for configuring an iSD100-SSL device (with SSL software version 1.0 only), which can be attached to your Web switch. If you do not have an iSD100-SSL device, disregard this menu and all submenus.

Once you have logged in as an administrator, this menu can be accessed using the following command:

```
# /cfg/isd
```

The iSD Menu is displayed below:

```
[isd Menu]
  ssl      - SSL Offload Menu
  ipstrt   - Set starting IP address for isd servers
  ipnum    - Set number of isd servers
  vrnum    - Set VRRP virtual interface router number to bind with
  on       - Turn IP address assignment ON
  off      - Turn IP address assignment OFF
  cur      - Display current isd server configuration
```

Table 6-42 explains the available configuration options and parameters.

Table 6-42 iSD Menu Options (/cfg/isd)

Command Syntax and Usage

ssl

Displays the SSL Offload Application Menu. To view menu options, see [page 181](#).

ipstrt <IP address (such as 192.4.17.101)>
Set the starting IP address for iSD100-SSL units.

ipnum <number (0-32), 0 to disable the IP address assignment for iSD units>
Set the number of iSD100-SSL units. If **ipstrt** is set at 192.4.17.101 and **ipnum** is 3, then the iSD100-SSLs attached to the switch will be numbered 192.4.17.101, 192.4.17.102, and 192.4.17.103.

Table 6-42 iSD Menu Options (/cfg/isd) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
vrnum <1-256>	Set the virtual router number to bind with the WebSwitch. This number must correspond to the virtual router of the Web switch that connects to the iSD100-SSL. For more information about virtual routers, see the /cfg/vrrp/vr command in the <i>Web OS 8.3 Command Reference</i> . 0 indicates none.
on	Globally turns on all iSD100-SSL processing. This enables the switch to assign IP addresses automatically and manage the iSD100-SSL units.
off	Globally turn all iSD100-SSL processing off. When iSD100-SSL processing is turned off, HTTPS traffic will be forwarded to the real Web server without being redirected to an iSD100-SSL. However, the real Web server must be configured to listen to HTTPS traffic on port 443.
cur	Display current iSD100-SSL configuration.

/cfg/isd/ssl

SSL Offload Application Menu

The SSL Offload Application Menu is used for configuring SSL certificates and iSD100-SSL ports, upgrading iSD100-SSL software, and resetting iSD100-SSL devices. This menu is available when connected to iSD100-SSL that is running SSL software version 1.0.

This menu can be accessed from the Web switch CLI prompt using the following command:

/cfg/isd/ssl

The SSL Offload Application Menu is displayed below:

[SSL Offload Application Menu]
addcrt - Add certificate for a virtual server IP address
tftpqrt - Tftp certificate from remote machine
remcrt - Remove certificate for a virtual server IP address
lstcrt - List certificate for a virtual server IP address
lstip - List all configured virtual server IP addresses
setport - Set port for isd-server communication
lstport - List port for isd-server communication
update - Update the isd software
shutdn - Shutdown (halt or reboot) isd

Table 6-43 explains the available configuration options and parameters.

Table 6-43 iSD Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/isd/ssl)

Command Syntax and Usage

addcrt

Add a virtual server IP address of a certificate to the iSD100-SSLs. Enter the virtual server IP address of the certificate, then cut and paste the contents of the certificate at the prompt. Finally, type three periods (. . .) on a new line to denote the end of the certificate.

tftpqrt

Get a certificate using TFTP. Enter an IP address of a TFTP server that has the certificate you want. Then, enter the virtual server IP address of the certificate filename.

remcrt

Remove a certificate from the iSD100-SSLs. Enter the virtual server IP address of the certificate you want to remove.

lstcrt

Display a certificate by entering the virtual server IP address for the certificate. The contents of the certificate are displayed.

Table 6-43 iSD Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/isd/ssl)

Command Syntax and Usage	
lstip	List all virtual server IP addresses for which certificates have been configured on the group of iSD100-SSLs.
setport	Set the port for communication between the iSD100-SSLs and the real Web servers. Enter the port number (usually port 81) at which the iSD100-SSLs contact the real Web servers via plain HTTP. All the real Web servers and iSD100-SSLs should be configured to the same port. This command can be used for security against direct access to secure Web pages.
lstport	List the port for communication between the iSD100-SSL and the real Web server. This shows the port that was set using the setport command (usually port 81).
update	Update or upgrade all iSD100-SSL software via TFTP. Enter the IP address of the remote TFTP server where the iSD100-SSL software image is stored. This command will upgrade all iSD100-SSLs that are connected to the Web switch.
shutdown <IP address of iSD100-SSL all >	Shutdown/Reboot one or more iSD100-SSLs that are connected to the Web switch.

/cfg/setup Setup

The setup program steps you through configuring the system date and time, BOOTP, IP, Spanning Tree, port, and VLAN parameters.

To start the setup program, at the **Configuration#** prompt, enter:

Configuration# **setup**

For a complete description of how to use **setup**, see [Chapter 2, “First-Time Configuration.”](#)

/cfg/dump

Dump

The dump program writes the current switch configuration to the terminal screen. To start the dump program, at the `Configuration#` prompt, enter:

```
Configuration# dump
```

The configuration is displayed with parameters that have been changed from the default values. The screen display can be captured, edited, and placed in a script file, which can be used to configure other switches through a Telnet connection. When using Telnet to configure a new switch, paste the configuration commands from the script file at the command line prompt of the switch. The active configuration can also be saved or loaded via TFTP, as described on [page 184](#).

/cfg/ptcfg <TFTP server> <filename>

Saving the Active Switch Configuration

When the `ptcfg` command is used, the switch's active configuration commands (as displayed using `/cfg/dump`) will be uploaded to the specified script configuration file on the TFTP server. To start the switch configuration upload, at the `Configuration#` prompt, enter:

```
Configuration# ptcfg <server> <filename>
```

Where *server* is the TFTP server IP address or hostname, and *filename* is the name of the target script configuration file.

NOTE – The output file is formatted with line-breaks but no carriage returns—the file cannot be viewed with editors that require carriage returns (such as Microsoft Notepad).

NOTE – If the TFTP server is running SunOS or the Solaris operating system, the specified `ptcfg` file must exist prior to executing the `ptcfg` command and must be writable (set with proper permission, and not locked by any application). The contents of the specified file will be replaced with the current configuration data.

/cfg/gtcfg <TFTP server> <filename> Loading the Active Switch Configuration

When the **gtcfg** command is used, the active configuration will be replaced with the commands found in the specified configuration file. The file can contain a full switch configuration or a partial switch configuration. The configuration loaded using **gtcfg** is not activated until the **apply** command is used. If the **apply** command is found in the configuration script file loaded using this command, the apply action will be performed automatically.

To start the switch configuration download, at the **Configuration#** prompt, enter:

```
Configuration# gtcfg <server> <filename>
```

Where *server* is the TFTP server IP address or hostname, and *filename* is the name of the target script configuration file.



CHAPTER 7

The SLB Configuration Menu

This chapter discusses how to use the Command Line Interface (CLI) for configuring Server Load Balancing (SLB) on the Web switch.

/cfg/slb

SLB Configuration

```
[Layer 4 Menu]
real      - Real Server Menu
group     - Real Server Group Menu
virt      - Virtual Server Menu
filt      - Filtering Menu
port      - Layer 4 Port Menu
gslb      - Global SLB Menu
url       - URL Resource Definition Menu
rurl      - RURL Options Menu
wap       - WAP Menu
sync      - Config Synch Menu
adv       - Layer 4 Advanced Menu
on        - Globally turn Layer 4 processing ON
off       - Globally turn Layer 4 processing OFF
cur       - Display current Layer 4 configuration
```

Table 7-1 Server Load Balancing Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage

real <real server number (1-255)>Displays the menu for configuring real servers. To view menu options, see [page 188](#).**group** <real server group number (1-256)>Displays the menu for placing real servers into real server groups. To view menu options, see [page 193](#).**virt** <virtual server number (1-256)>Displays the menu for defining virtual servers. To view menu options, see [page 198](#).**filt** <filter ID (1-2048)>Displays the menu for Filtering and Application Redirection. To view menu options, see [page 205](#).**port** <port number (1-9)>Displays the menu for setting physical switch port states for Layer 4 activity. To view menu options, see [page 215](#).**gslb**Displays the menu for configuring Global Server Load Balancing. To view menu options, see [page 217](#).**url**Displays URL Redirection and Load Balance Menu. To view menu options, see [page 223](#).**rurl****Note:** This feature is reserved for use with an Alteon Integrated Service Director (iSD running an RURL application).Displays configuration and debug options specific to the RURL Menu. To view menu options, see [page 227](#). The RURL options menu allows the user to:

- Enable/disable the option to deny packets from passing through Layer 2 if the switch runs out of buffer resources
- Set the RURL destination port number or range for redirection.

wapDisplays WAP Menu. To view menu options, see [page 228](#)**sync**Displays the Synch Peer Switch Menu. To view menu options, see [page 229](#).**adv**Displays the Layer 4 Advanced Menu. To view menu options, see [page 231](#).

Table 7-1 Server Load Balancing Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage	
on	Globally turns on Layer 4 software services for Server Load Balancing and Application Redirection. This option can be performed only after the optional Layer 4 software is enabled (see “Activating Optional Software on page 244). Enabling Layer 4 services is not necessary for using filters only to allow, deny, or NAT traffic.
off	Globally disables Layer 4 services. All configuration information will remain in place (if applied or saved), but the software processes will no longer be active in the switch
cur	Displays the current Server Load Balancing configuration.

Filtering and Layer 4 (Server Load Balancing)

Filters configured to allow, deny, or NAT traffic do not require Layer 4 software to be activated. These filters are not affected by the Server Load Balancing **on** and **off** commands in this menu.

Application Redirection filters, however, require Layer 4 software services. Layer 4 processing must be turned on before redirection filters will work.

/cfg/slb/real <server number> Real Server SLB Configuration

```
[Real server 1 Menu]
  layer7 - Real Server Layer 7 Command Menu
  rip    - Set IP addr of real server
  name   - Set server name
  weight - Set server weight
  maxcon - Set maximum number of connections
  tmout  - Set minutes inactive connection remains open
  backup - Set backup real server
  inter  - Set interval between health checks
  retry  - Set number of failed attempts to declare server DOWN
  restr  - Set number of successful attempts to declare server UP
  addport - Add real port to server
  remport - Remove real port to server
  remote - Enable/disable remote site operation
  proxy  - Enable/disable client proxy operation
  submac - Enable/disable source MAC address substitution
  ena    - Enable real server
  dis    - Disable real server
  del    - Delete real server
  cur    - Display current real server configuration
```

This menu is used for configuring information about real servers that participate in a server pool for Server Load Balancing or Application Redirection. The required parameters are:

- Real server IP address
- Enabling the real server (disabled by default)

Table 7-2 Real Server Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/real)

Command Syntax and Usage

layer7

Displays the Layer 7 Menu. To view menu options, see [page 192](#).

rip <server IP address>

Sets the IP address of the real server in dotted decimal format. When this command is used, the address entered is PINGed to determine if the server is up, and the administrator will be warned if the server does not respond.

name <string, maximum 15 characters| none>

Defines a 15-character alias for each real server. This will enable the network administrator to quickly identify the server by a natural language keyword value.

Table 7-2 Real Server Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/real)

Command Syntax and Usage

weight <server weight (1-48)>

Sets the weighting value (1 to 48) that this real server will be given in the load balancing algorithms. Higher weighting values force the server to receive more connections than the other servers configured in the same real server group. By default, each real server is given a weight setting of 1. A setting of 10 would assign the server roughly 10 times the number of connections as a server with a weight of 1.

Weights are not applied when using the hash or minmisses metrics (see [“Server Load Balancing Metrics” on page 196](#)).

maxcon <maximum connections (0-200000)>

Sets the maximum number of connections that this server should simultaneously support. By default, the number of maximum connections is set at 20,000. This option sets a threshold as an artificial barrier, such that new connections will not be issued to this server if the maxcon limit is reached. New connections will be issued again to this server once the number of current connections has decreased below the maxcon setting.

If all servers in a real server group for a virtual server reach their maxcon limit at the same time, client requests will be sent to the backup/overflow server or backup/overflow server group. If no backup servers/server group are configured, client requests will be dropped by the virtual server.

tmout <even number of minutes (2-30)>

Sets the number of minutes an inactive session remains open (in even numbered increments).

Every client-to-server session being load balanced is recorded in the switch's Session Table. When a client makes a request, the session is recorded in the table, the data is transferred until the client ends the session, and the session table entry is then removed.

In certain circumstances, such as when a client application is abnormally terminated by the client's system, TCP/UDP connections will remain registered in the switch's binding table. In order to prevent table overflow, these orphaned entries must be aged out of the binding table.

Using the tmout option, you can set the number of minutes to wait before removing orphan table entries. Settings must be specified in even numbered increments between 2 and 30 minutes. The default setting is 10.

This option is also used with the Persistent option (see /cfg/slb/virt/pbind). When persistent is activated, this option sets how long an idle client is allowed to remain associated with a particular server.

backup <real server number (1-255)>| none

Sets the real server used as the backup/overflow server for this real server.

To prevent loss of service if a particular real server fails, use this option to assign a backup real server number. Then, if the real server becomes inoperative, the switch will activate the backup real server until the original becomes operative again.

The backup server is also used in overflow situations. If the real server reaches its maxcon (maximum connections) limit, the backup comes online to provide additional processing power until the original server becomes desaturated.

The same backup/overflow server may be assigned to more than one real server at the same time

Table 7-2 Real Server Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/real)

Command Syntax and Usage

inter *<number of seconds between health checks (0-60)>*

Sets the interval between real server health verification attempts.

Determining the health of each real server is a necessary function for Layer 4 switching. For TCP services, the switch verifies that real servers and their corresponding services are operational by opening a TCP connection to each service, using the defined service ports configured as part of each virtual service. For UDP services, the switch pings servers to determine their status.

The **inter** option lets you choose the time between health checks. The range is from 1 to 60 seconds. The default interval is 2 seconds. An interval of "0" disables health checking for the server.

retry *<number of consecutive health checks (1-63)>*

Sets the number of failed health check attempts required before declaring this real server inoperative. The range is from 1 to 63 attempts. The default is 4 attempts

restr *<number of consecutive health checks (1-63)>*

Sets the number of successful health check attempts required before declaring a UDP service operational. The range is from 1 to 63 attempts. The default is 8 attempts

addport *<real server port (2-65534)>*

Add multiple service ports to the server.

remport *<real server port (2-65534)>*

Remove multiple service ports from the server.

remote disable|enable

Enables or disables remote site operation for this server. This option should be enabled when the real IP address supplied above represents a remote server (real or virtual) that this switch will access as part of its Global Server Load Balancing network. By default, this option is disabled.

proxy disable|enable

Enables or disables proxy IP address translation. With this option enabled (default), a client request from any application can be proxied using a load-balancing Proxy IP address (PIP).

submac disable|enable

Enables or disables source MAC address substitution. By default, this option is disabled.

exclude disable|enable

Enables or disables exclusionary string matching.

enable

You *must* perform this command to enable this real server for Layer 4 service. When enabled, the real server can process virtual server requests associated with its real server group. This option, when the **apply** and **save** commands are used, enables this real server for operation until explicitly disabled.

See **/oper/slb/ena** on [page 240](#) for an operations-level command.

Table 7-2 Real Server Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/real)

Command Syntax and Usage	
dis	Disables this real server from Layer 4 service. Any disabled server will no longer process virtual server requests as part of the real server group to which it is assigned. This option, when the apply is are used, disables this real server until it is explicitly re-enabled. This option <i>does not</i> perform a graceful server shutdown. See /oper/slb/dis on page 240 for an operations-level command.
del	Deletes this real server from the Layer 4 switching software configuration. This removes the real server from operation within its real server groups. Use this command with caution, as it will delete any configuration options that have been set for this real server. This option <i>does not</i> perform a graceful server shutdown.
cur	Displays the current configuration information for this real server.

/cfg/slb/real <server number>/layer7

Real Server Layer 7 Configuration

[Layer 7 Commands Menu]

addlb

- Add URL path for URL load balance

remlb

- Remove URL path for URL load balance

nocook

- Enable/disable no available URL cookie operation

exclude

- Enable/disable exclusionary string matching

cur

- Display current real server configuration

This menu is used for entering commands and strings for Layer 7 processing.

Table 7-3 Layer 7 Commands Menu Options (/cfg/slb/real/layer7)

Command Syntax and Usage

addlb <URL path ID (1-128)>
Adds the predefined URL loadbalance string ID to the real server.

remlb <URL path ID (1-128)>
Removes the predefined URL loadbalance string ID from the real server.

nocook **disable|enable**
Enables or disables the cooked assigned server. By default, this option is disabled.

exclude **disable|enable**
Enables or disables *exclusionary string* matching. By default, this option is disabled.

cur
Displays the current real server configuration.

/cfg/slb/group *<real server group number>*

Real Server Group SLB Configuration

[Real server group 1 Menu]

metric

- Set metric used to select next server in group

content

- Set health check content

health

- Set health check type

backup

- Set backup real server or group

name

- Set real server group name

realthr

- Set real server failure threshold

add

- Add real server

rem

- Remove real server

del

- Delete real server group

cur

- Display current group configuration

This menu is used for combining real servers into real server groups. Each real server group should consist of all the real servers which provide a specific service for load balancing. Each group must consist of at least one real server. Each real server can belong to more than one group. Real server groups are used both for Server Load Balancing and Application Redirection.

Table 7-4 Real Server Group Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/group)

Command Syntax and Usage

metric

leastconns|roundrobin|minmisses|hash|response|bandwidth

Set the load balancing metric used for determining which real server in the group will be the target of the next client request. The default setting is **leastconns**. See [“Server Load Balancing Metrics” on page 196](#).

content

<filename>|/|<host>|<filename>|none

This option defines the specific content which is examined during health checks. The content depends on the type of health check specified in the **health** option (see below).

Table 7-4 Real Server Group Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/group)**Command Syntax and Usage****health**

link|icmp|tcp|http|dns|pop3|smtp|nntp|ftp|imap|radius|sslh|script<n>|wsp|wtls|

Sets the type of health checking performed. The default is `tcp`. The options are as follows:

<code>link</code>	For IDSLB group only, checks status of port for each server.
<code>icmp</code>	For Layer 3 health checking, <code>ping</code> the server.
<code>tcp</code>	For TCP service, open and close a TCP/IP connection to the server.
<code>http</code>	For HTTP service, uses HTTP 1.1 GETS when a <code>HOST:</code> header is required to check that the URL content specified in <code>content</code> is accessible on the server. Otherwise, an HTTP/1.0 GET occurs.
<code>dns</code>	For Domain Name Service, check that the domain name specified in <code>content</code> can be resolved by the server.
<code>pop3</code>	For user mail service, check that the <code>user:password</code> account specified in <code>content</code> exists on the server.
<code>smtp</code>	For mail-server services, check that the user specified in <code>content</code> is accessible on the server.
<code>nntp</code>	For newsgroup services, check that the newsgroup name specified in <code>content</code> is accessible on the server.
<code>ftp</code>	For FTP services, check that the filename specified in <code>content</code> is accessible on the server through anonymous login.
<code>imap</code>	For user mail service, check that the <code>user:password</code> value specified in <code>content</code> exists on the serve
<code>radius</code>	For RADIUS remote access server authentication, check that the <code>user:password</code> value specified in <code>content</code> exists on the Web switch and the server. To perform application health checking to a RADIUS server, the network administrator must also configure the <code>/cfg/slb/secrt</code> parameter. The <code>secrt</code> value is a field of up to 32 alphanumeric characters that is used by the switch to encrypt a password during the RSA Message Digest Algorithm (MD5) and by the RADIUS server to decrypt the password during verification.
<code>sslh</code>	Enables the switch to query the health of the SSL servers by sending an SSL client “Hello” packet and then verify the contents of the server’s “Hello” response. During the handshake, the user and server exchange security certificates, negotiate an encryption and compression method, and establish a session ID for each session.
<code>script</code>	Enables the use of script-based health checks in send/expect format to check for application and content availability. <code><n></code> denotes the health script number (1-8).
<code>wsp</code>	Enables connectionless WSP content health checks for WAP gateways. The content under <code>/cfg/slb/adv/waphc</code> (see page 234) must also be configured.
<code>wtls</code>	Provides Wireless Transport Layer Security (WTLS) Hello-based health check for encrypted and connection-oriented WTLS traffic on port 9203.

Table 7-4 Real Server Group Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/group)

Command Syntax and Usage	
backup <i>r</i> <real server number (1-256)> <i>g</i> <group number> none	Sets the real server or real server group used as the backup/overflow server/server group for this real server group. To prevent loss of service if the entire real server group fails, use this option to assign a backup real server/real server group number. Then, if the real server group becomes inoperative, the switch will activate the backup real server /server group until one of the original real servers becomes operative again. The backup server/server group is also used in overflow situations. If all the servers in the real server group reach their maxcon (maximum connections) limit, the backup server/server group comes online to provide additional processing power until one of the original servers becomes desaturated. The same backup/overflow server/server group may be assigned to more than one real server group at the same time.
name <string, maximum 31 characters>	Defines a 15-character alias for each Real Server Group. This will enable the network administrator to quickly identify the server group by a natural language keyword value.
realthr <real server failure threshold (1-31)>	Specifies a minimum number of real servers available. If any time, the number reaches this minimum limit, a SYSLOG ALERT message is sent to the configured SYSLOG servers stating that the real server threshold has been reached for the concerned server load balancing group. The default threshold is 0, which also means the option is disabled
add <real server number (1-255)>	Adds a real server to this real server group. You will be prompted to enter the number (1 to 256) of the real server to add to this group.
rem <real server number (1-255)>	Remove a real server from this real server group. You will be prompted for the ID number for the real server to remove from this group.
del	Deletes this real server group from the Layer 4 software configuration. This removes the group from operation under all virtual servers it is assigned to. Use this command with caution: if you remove the only group that is assigned to a virtual server, the virtual server will become inoperative.
cur	Displays the current configuration parameters for this real server group.

Server Load Balancing Metrics

Using the `metric` command, you can set a number of metrics for selecting which real server in a group gets the next client request. These metrics are described in the following table:

Table 7-5 Real Server Group Metrics (/cfg/slb/group/metric)

Option and Description

minmisses

Minimum misses. This metric is optimized for Application Redirection. When `minmisses` is specified for a real server group performing Application Redirection, all requests for a specific IP destination address will be sent to the same server. This is particularly useful in caching applications, helping to maximize successful cache hits. Best statistical load balancing is achieved when the IP address destinations of load balanced frames are spread across a broad range of IP subnets.

Minmisses can also be used for Server Load Balancing. When specified for a real server group performing Server Load Balancing, all requests from a specific client will be sent to the same server. This is useful for applications where client information must be retained on the server between sessions. Server load with this metric becomes most evenly balanced as the number of active clients increases.

hash

Like `minmisses`, the `hash` metric uses IP address information in the client request to select a server.

For Application Redirection, all requests for a specific IP destination address will be sent to the same server. This is particularly useful for maximizing successful cache hits.

For Server Load Balancing, all requests from a specific client will be sent to the same server. This is useful for applications where client information must be retained between sessions.

The `hash` metric should be used if the statistical load balancing achieved using `minmisses` is not as optimal as desired. Although the `hash` metric can provide more even load balancing at any given instance, it is not as effective as `minmisses` when servers leave and reenter service.

If the Load Balancing statistics indicate that one server is processing significantly more requests over time than other servers, consider using the `hash` metric.

leastconns

Least connections. With this option, the number of connections currently open on each real server is measured in real time. The server with the fewest current connections is considered to be the best choice for the next client connection request.

This option is the most self-regulating, with the fastest servers typically getting the most connections over time, due to their ability to accept, process, and shut down connections faster than slower servers.

roundrobin

Round robin. With this option, new connections are issued to each server in turn: the first real server in this group gets the first connection, the second real server gets the next connection, followed by the third real server, and so on. When all the real servers in this group have received at least one connection, the issuing process starts over with the first real server.

Table 7-5 Real Server Group Metrics (/cfg/slb/group/metric)

Option and Description
response Real server response time. With this option, the switch monitors and records the amount of time that each real server takes to reply to a health check. The response time is used to adjust the real server weights. The weights are adjusted so they are inversely proportional to a moving average of response time.
bandwidth Bandwidth Metric. With this option, the real server weights are adjusted so they are inversely proportional to the number of octets that the real server processes during a given interval. The higher the bandwidth used, the smaller is the weight assigned to that server.
NOTE – Under the <code>leastconns</code> and <code>roundrobin</code> metrics, when real servers are configured with weights (see the <code>weight</code> option on page 188), a higher proportion of connections are given to servers with higher weights. This can improve load balancing among servers of different performance levels. Weights are not applied when using the <code>hash</code> or <code>minmisses</code> metrics.

/cfg/slb/virt <virtual server number> Virtual Server SLB Configuration

```
[Virtual Server 1 Menu]
  service - Virtual Service Menu
  vip      - Set IP addr of virtual server
  dname    - Set domain name of virtual server
  cont     - Set BW Contract
  layr3    - Enable/disable layer 3 only balancing
  ena      - Enable virtual server
  dis      - Disable virtual server
  del      - Delete virtual server
  cur      - Display current virtual configuration
```

This menu is used for configuring the virtual servers which will be the target for client requests for Server Load Balancing. The required parameters to configure are

- Virtual server IP address
- Adding a virtual TCP/UDP port and real server group
- Enabling the virtual server (disabled by default)

Table 7-6 Virtual Server Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/virt)

Command Syntax and Usage

service <virtual port or name, from 2 - 65534>

Displays the Virtual Services Menu. The virtual port name can be a well-known port name, such as http, ftp, the service number, and so on. To get more information about well-known ports, see the **sport** command on [page 207](#). To view services menu options, see [page 200](#).

vip <server IP address>

Sets the IP address of the virtual server using dotted-decimal notation. The virtual server created within the switch will respond to ARPs and PINGs from network ports as if it was a normal server. Client requests directed to the virtual server's IP address will be balanced among the real servers available to it through real server group assignments.

dname <domain name>|none

Sets the domain name for this virtual server. The domain name typically includes the name of the company or organization, and the Internet group code (.com, .edu, .gov, .org, and so forth). An example would be foocorp.com. It does not include the hostname portion (www, www2, ftp, and so forth). The maximum number of characters that can be used in a domain name is 34. To define the hostname, see **hname** below. To clear the **dname**, specify the name as **none**.

Table 7-6 Virtual Server Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/virt)

Command Syntax and Usage	
cont <BWM contract (1-1024)>	Enter a new Bandwidth Management Contract for this virtual service. By default, all services under this virtual server are assigned this BW contract. However, the BW contract can be changed for a selected virtual server with /cfg/slb/virt #/ser y/cont. All the frames that match this virtual server services are assigned this BW contract if the previously assigned contract for the frame has lower or equal precedence of the virtual server contract. The default number of contracts is set at 256 for AD3/180e and 1024 for AD4/184.
layr3 disable enable	Normally, the client IP address is used with the client Layer 4 port number to produce a session identifier. When the layr3 option is enabled (disabled by default), the switch uses only the client IP address as the session identifier. It associates all the connections from the same client with the same real server while any connection exists between them. This option is necessary for some server applications where state information about the client system is divided across different simultaneous connections, and also in applications where TCP fragments are generated. If the real server to which the client is assigned becomes unavailable, the Layer 4 software will allow the client to connect to a different server.
ena	Enables this virtual server. This option activates the virtual server within the switch so that it can service client requests sent to its defined IP address.
dis	This option disables the virtual server so that it no longer services client requests.
del	This command removes this virtual server from operation within the switch and deletes it from the Layer 4 switching software configuration. Use this command with caution, as it will delete the options that have been set for this virtual server.
cur	Displays the current configuration of the specified virtual server.

/cfg/slb/virt *<server number>* **/service** *<virtual port or name>*

Virtual Server Service Configuration

```
[Virtual Server 1 rtsp Service Menu]
group    - Set real server group number
rport    - Set real port
hname    - Set hostname
dbind    - Enable/disable delayed binding
httpslb  - Set HTTP SLB processing
cont     - Set BW contract for this virtual service
urlcont  - Set BW cont of an URL string specific to this service
pbind    - Set persistent binding type
rcount   - Set multi response count
udp      - Enable/disable UDP balancing
frag     - Enable/disable remapping UDP server fragments
nonat    - Enable/disable only substituting MAC addresses
rtspslb  - Enable/disable RTSP URL balancing
ftpp     - Enable/disable FTP SLB parsing for virtual server
del      - Delete virtual service
cur      - Display current virtual service configuration
```

This menu is used for configuring services assigned to a virtual server

Table 7-7 Virtual Server Service Configuration Options (/cfg/slb/virt/service)

Command Syntax and Usage

group *<real server group number (1-256)>*

Sets a real server group for this service. The default is set at 1. You will be prompted to enter the number (1 to 256) of the real server group to add to this service.

rport *<real server port (0-65534)>*

Defines the real server TCP or UDP port assigned to this service. By default, this is the same as the virtual port (service virtual port). If **rport** is configured to be different than the virtual port defined in **/cfg/slb/virt/service** *<virtual port>*, the switch will map the virtual port to this real port.

Table 7-7 Virtual Server Service Configuration Options (/cfg/slb/virt/service)

Command Syntax and Usage	
hname <i><hostname> none</i>	Sets the hostname for a service added. This is used in conjunction with dname (above) to create a full host/domain name for individual services. The format for this command is as follows: # hname <i><hostname></i> For example, to add a hostname for Web services, you could specify www as the hostname. If a dname of “foocorp.com” was defined (above), “www.foocorp.com” would be the full host/domain name for the service. To clear the hostname for a service, use the following command: # hname none
dbind	Enables or disables Layer 4 Delayed Binding for TCP service and ports. Enabling this command protects the server from Denial of Service (DoS) attacks. This option is disabled by default.
httpslb urlslb host cookie browser urllhash others none	Load balances on the following applications: ■ urlslb: Enable or disable URL SLB ■ host: Enable or disable for virtual hosting ■ cookie: Enable or disable cookie-based SLB for cookie-based preferential load balancing. You will be prompted for the following: Cookie name, starting point of the cookie value, number of bytes to be extracted, enable/disable checking for cookie in URI ■ browser: Enable or disable SLB, based on browser type ■ urllhash: Enable or disable URL hashing based on URI ■ others: Requires inputs for a particular header field ■ none: Removes any HTTPSLB configuration. You may choose to combine or select applications to load balance using the commands <i>and</i> and/or <i>or</i>. For example: ■ httpslb <i><none></i> ■ httpslb <i><application></i> ■ httpslb <i><application> and or <application></i>
cont <i><URL path ID (1-128)> <BWM Contract (0-1024)></i>	Sets a Bandwidth Management contract for this virtual service. The default number of contracts is set at 256 for Alteon AD3/180e and 1024 for Alteon AD4/184 Web switches. Note: If you enter 0 for the service contract, it will carry the value entered for the Virtual Server IP (vip) contract.
urlcont <i><URL path ID (1-128)> <BWM contract <1-1024></i>	Sets the Bandwidth Management contract of a string specific to this virtual service. Only use this command when a string is shared by multiple virtual services and each service requires a separate bandwidth. The default is set at 1024.

Table 7-7 Virtual Server Service Configuration Options (/cfg/slb/virt/service)

Command Syntax and Usage

pbind clientip|cookie|sslid|disable

Enables or disables persistent bindings for a real server (disabled by default). This may be necessary for some server applications where state information about the client system is retained on the server over a series of sequential connections, such as with SSL (Secure Socket Layer, HTTPS), Web site search results, or multi-page Web forms.

- The **clientip** option uses the client IP address as an identifier, and associates all connections from the same client with the same real server until the client becomes inactive and the connection is aged out of the binding table. The connection timeout value (set in the Real Server Menu) is used to control how long these inactive but persistent connections remain associated with their real servers. When the client resumes activity *after* their connection has been aged out, they will be connected to the most appropriate real server based on the load balancing metric.

An alternative approach may be to use the real server group metrics **minmisses** or **hash** (see [Server Load Balancing Metrics](#)).

- The **cookie** option uses a cookie defined in the HTTP header or placed in the URI for hashing. For more information on **cookie** option, see [“Cookie-Based Persistence” on page 204](#). For detailed information on Cookie-Based Persistence, see the *Persistence* chapter in the *Web OS 9.0 Application Guide*.
- The **sslid** option is for Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), which is a set of protocols built on top of TCP/IP that allow an application server and user to communicate over an encrypted HTTP session. SSL provides authentication, non-repudiation, and security. The session ID is a value comprising 32 random bytes chosen by the SSL server that gets stored in a session hash table. By enabling the **sslid** option, all subsequent SSL sessions which present the same session ID will be directed to the same real server.
- The **disable** option enables you to disable persistent binding, if it has previously been enabled for a particular application.

rcount <1–16>

Sets the maximum response counter for cookie-based persistence. The Web switch will examine each server response until the cookie is found, or until the maximum count is reached. The default number is 1.

udp disable|enable|stateless

Enables or disables UDP load balancing for a virtual port (disabled by default). You can configure this option if the service(s) to be load balanced include UDP and TCP: for example, DNS uses UDP and TCP. In those environments, you must activate UDP balancing for the particular virtual servers that clients will communicate with using UDP.

Note: If applying a filter to the same virtual server IP address on which UDP load balancing is enabled, *disable caching on that filter for optimal performance*. For more information, see the **cache** command in [Table 7-11 on page 211](#).

frag disable|enable

Enables or disables remapping server fragments for virtual port. This option is enabled by default.

Table 7-7 Virtual Server Service Configuration Options (/cfg/slb/virt/service)

Command Syntax and Usage	
nonat disable enable	Enables or disables substituting only the MAC address of the real server (disabled by default). This option does not substitute IP addresses. This option is used for Direct Server Return (DSR) in an one-armed load balancing setup, so that frames returning from server to the client do not have to pass through the switch.
rtspslb disable enable	This Layer 7 load balancing option enables or disables URL hashing using the URL in the RTSP DESCRIBE request. It allows a real server to be selected by hashing on the entire URL (except the extension .xxx) To enable Layer 7 load balancing for RTSP service, group and hname must be configured. Note: This command only works when service 554 or rtsp is used. This option is disabled by default.
ftpp disable enable	Enables or disables FTP SLB parsing for this virtual server (disabled by default). When this option is enabled, the switch modifies the appropriate FTP method/command to support FTP servers on a private network for both active and passive FTP modes. To do this, the switch looks deeper into the packet and modifies the port command for active FTP or the “entering the passive mode” command for passive FTP.
del	This command removes this virtual service from operation within the switch and deletes it from the Layer 4 switching software configuration. Use this command with caution, as it will delete the options that have been set for this virtual service.
cur	Displays the current configuration of services on the specified virtual server.

/cfg/slb/virt/service/pbind cookie

Cookie-Based Persistence

The `cookie` option is used to establish cookie-based persistence, and has the following command syntax and usage:

Table 7-8 Command Syntax and Usage for `pbind cookie` Options
(/cfg/slb/virt/service/pbind cookie)

Option	Description
<mode>	Specify the mode for cookie-based persistence. The following three modes are available: ■ p: Passive mode. In this mode, the network administrator configures the Web server to embed a cookie in the server response that the switch looks for in subsequent requests from the same client. ■ r: Rewrite mode. In active cookie mode (or cookie rewrite mode), the switch, and not the network administrator, generates the cookie value on behalf of the server. The switch intercepts this persistence cookie and rewrites the value to include server-specific information before sending it to the client. ■ i: Insert mode. When a client sends a request <i>without</i> a cookie, the server responds with the data, and the switch inserts an <i>Alteon persistence cookie</i> into the data packet. The switch uses this cookie to bind to the appropriate server.
<name>	Specify the name of the cookie.
<offset>	Specify the starting point of the cookie value.
<length>	Specify the number of bytes to be extracted.
<URI>	Look for cookie in the URI. If you want to look for cookie name or value in the URI, enter e to enable this option. To look for cookie in the HTTP header, enter d to disable this option.
<MRC>	Set multiple response count.

For more information on Cookie-Based Persistence, see the *Web OS 9.0 Application Guide*.

/cfg/slb/filt <filter number> **SLB Filter Configuration**

[Filter 1 Advanced Menu]

```

adv      - Filter Advanced Menu
smac     - Set source MAC address
dmac     - Set destination MAC address
sip      - Set source IP address
smask    - Set source IP mask
dip      - Set destination IP address
dmask    - Set destination IP mask
proto    - Set IP protocol
sport    - Set source TCP/UDP port or range
dport    - Set destination TCP/UDP port or range
action   - Set action
group    - Set real server group for redirection
rport    - Set real server port for redirection
nat      - Set which addresses are network address translated
invert   - Enable or disable filter inversion
ena      - Enable filter
dis      - Disable filter
del      - Delete filter
cur      - Display current filter configuration

```

The switch supports up to 2048 traffic filters. Each filter can be configured to allow, deny, redirect or perform Network Address Translation on traffic according to a variety of address and protocol specifications, and each physical switch port can be configured to use any combination of filters. This command is disabled by default.

There are several options available in the Filter Advanced Menu ([/cfg/slb/filt/adv](#), [page 210](#)) that can be used to provide more information through syslog. The types of information include:

- IP protocol
- TCP/UDP ports
- TCP flags
- ICMP message type

The following parameters are required for filtering:

- Set the address, masks, and/or protocol that will be affected by the filter
- Set the filter action (allow, deny, redirect, nat)
- Enable the filter

- Add the filter to a switch port
- Enable filtering on the Web switch port

Table 7-9 Filter Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/filt)

Command Syntax and Usage

adv

Displays the Filter Advanced Menu. To view menu options, see [page 210](#).

smac any|<MAC address>

Sets the source MAC address. The default is **any**.

dmac any|<MAC address>

Sets the destination MAC address. The default is **any**..

sip any|<IP address>

If defined, traffic with this source IP address will be affected by this filter. Specify an IP address in dotted decimal notation, or “**any**”. A range of IP addresses is produced when used with the **smask** below. The default is **any** if the source MAC address is **any**.

smask <IP address>

This IP address mask is used with the **sip** to select traffic which this filter will affect. See details below for more information on producing address ranges. For more information, see “[Defining IP Address Ranges for Filters](#)” on [page 209](#).

dip any|<IP address>

If defined, traffic with this destination IP address will be affected by this filter. Specify an IP address in dotted decimal notation, or “**any**”. A range of IP addresses is produced when used with the **dmask** below. The default is **any** if the destination MAC address is **any**. For more information, see “[Defining IP Address Ranges for Filters](#)” on [page 209](#).

dmask <IP subnet mask (such as 255.255.255.0)>

This IP address mask is used with the **dip** to select traffic which this filter will affect.

proto any|<number>|<name>

If defined, traffic from the specified protocol is affected by this filter. Specify the protocol number, name, or “**any**”. The default is **any**. Listed below are some of the well-known protocols.

<u>Number</u>	<u>Name</u>
1icmp	
2igmp	
6tcp	
17udp	
89ospf	
112vrrp	

Table 7-9 Filter Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/filt)

Command Syntax and Usage

sport any|<name>|<port>|<port>-<port>

If defined, traffic with the specified TCP or UDP source port will be affected by this filter. Specify the port number, range, name, or “**any**”. The default is **any**. Listed below are some of the well-known ports:

Number	Name	Number	Name
20	ftp-data	111	sunrpc
21	ftp	119	nntp
22	ssh	123	ntp
23	telnet	143	imap
25	smtp	144	news
37	time	161	snmp
42	name	162	snmptrap
43	whois	179	bgp
53	domain	194	irc
69	tftp	220	imap3
70	gopher	389	ldap
79	finger	443	https
80	http	520	rip
109	pop2	554	rtsp
110	pop3	1985	hsrp

dport any|<name>|<port>|<port> - <port>

If defined, traffic with the specified real server TCP or UDP destination port will be affected by this filter. Specify the port number, range, name, or “**any**”, just as with **sport** above. The default is set at **any**.

action

Specify the action this filter takes:

allow	Allow the frame to pass (by default).
deny	Discard frames that fit this filter’s profile. This can be used for building basic security profiles.
redir	Redirect frames that fit this filter’s profile, such as for web cache redirection. In addition, Layer 4 processing must be activated (see the <code>/cfg/slb/on</code> command on page 185).
nat	Perform generic Network Address Translation (NAT). This can be used to map the source or destination IP address and port information of a private network scheme to/from the advertised network IP address and ports. This is used in conjunction with the nat option below and can also be combined with proxies.

group <real server group number (1-16)>

This option applies only when **redir** is specified at the filter action. Define a real server group (1 to 16) to which redirected traffic will be sent. The default is group 1

Table 7-9 Filter Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/filt)

Command Syntax and Usage	
rport <real server port (0-65535)>	This option applies only when redir is specified at the filter action. This defines the real server TCP or UDP port to which redirected traffic will be sent. For valid Layer 4 health checks, this must be configured whenever TCP protocol traffic is redirected. Also, if transparent proxies are used for Network Address Translation (NAT) on the Web switch (see the pip option in Table 7-14 on page 215), rport must be configured for all Application Redirection filters. The default is set at 0.
nat source dest	When nat is set as the filter action (see above), this command specifies whether Network Address Translation (NAT) is performed on the source or the destination information. Destination (dest) is set as the default filter. If source is specified, the frame's source IP address (sip) and port number (sport) are replaced with the dip and dport values. If dest is specified, the frame's destination IP address (dip) and port number (dport) are replaced with the sip and sport values.
inver disable enable	Inverts the filter logic. If the conditions of the filter are met, <i>don't</i> act. If the conditions for the filter are <i>not met</i> , perform the assigned action. This option is disabled by default.
ena	Enables this filter.
dis	Disables this filter.
del	Deletes this filter.
cur	Displays the current filter configuration.

Defining IP Address Ranges for Filters

You can specify a range of IP address for filtering both the source and/or destination IP address for traffic. When a range of IP addresses is needed, the `sip` (source) or `dip` (destination) defines the base IP address in the desired range, and the `smask` (source) or `dmask` (destination) is the mask which is applied to produce the range.

For example, to determine if a client request's destination IP address should be redirected to the cache servers attached to a particular switch, the destination IP address is masked (bitwise AND) with the `dmask` and then compared to the `dip`.

As another example, you could configure the switch with two filters so that each would handle traffic filtering for one half of the Internet. To do this, you could define the following parameters:

Table 7-10 Filtering IP Address Ranges

Filter	Internet Address Range	dip	dmask
#1	0.0.0.0 - 127.255.255.255	0.0.0.0	128.0.0.0
#2	128.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	128.0.0.0	128.0.0.0

/cfg/slb/filt <filter number>/adv

Advanced Filter Configuration

[Filter 1 Advanced Menu]

tcp

- TCP Flags Advanced Menu

tos

- Set IP Type of Service

tmask

- Set IP TOS mask

newtos

- Set new IP TOS

option

- Enable/disable IP option matching

icmp

- Set ICMP message type

cont

- Set BW contract

tmout

- Set NAT session timeout

proxy

- Enable/disable client proxy

cache

- Enable/disable caching sessions that match filter

log

- Enable/disable logging

ack

- Enable/disable TCP ACK or RST matching

fwlb

- Enable/disable firewall redirect hash method

linklb

- Enable/disable WAN link load balancing

idshash

- Set hash parameter for intrusion detection SLB

urlp

- Enable/disable URL parsing

urlcont

- Set BW cont of an URL path specific to this filter

rurl

- Enable/disable RURL parsing

ftpa

- Enable/disable active FTP NAT

rdshp

- Enable/disable WAP RADIUS Snooping

cur

- Display current advanced filter configuration

Table 7-11 Advanced Filter Menu (/cfg/slb/filt/adv)

Command Syntax and Usage

tcp	Displays the TCP Flags Advanced Menu. To view menu options, see page 213 .
tos <0-255>	Sets the IP Type of Service. The default is set at 0. This option is used to match TOS in frames.
tmask <0-255>	Sets the IP Type of Service mask. The default is set at 0. This option is used to match TOS in frames.
newtos <0-255>	Sets the new IP Type of Service for allow filters. The default is set at 0. A value of “0” means that the TOS does not change.

Table 7-11 Advanced Filter Menu (/cfg/slb/filt/adv) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
option disable enable	Enables or disables IP option matching. An option comes from the sender, for example, a route specification. If a packet has an IP option like ack, reset, and so forth, it will match (fire) the filter. Filtering a single option is not supported. The filtering options work only with cache-disabled filtering. This option is disabled by default.
icmp any <number> name	Sets the ICMP message type. The default is set at any. For a list of ICMP message types, see Table 7-13 on page 214. For a detailed description of filtering and ICMP, see the <i>Web OS 9.0 Application Guide</i>.
proxy disable enable	Enables or disables client proxy. This option applies only when redir or nat is specified as the filter action. Enable or disable proxy IP address translation for traffic matching the filter criteria. By default, this is enabled. If disabled, any proxy defined for the switch port using the pip command (see page 215) is not performed for traffic meeting the filter criteria. This is useful when certain traffic must retain original IP address information, or when other forms of translation (such as Application Redirection or NAT) are preferred.
cache disable enable	Enables or disables caching sessions that match the filter. Exercise caution while applying cache-enabled and cache-disabled filters to the same switch port. A cache-enabled filter creates a session entry in the switch, so that the switch can bypass checking for subsequent frames that match the same criteria. Cache is enabled by default. Note: Cache should be disabled if applying a filter to virtual server IP address while performing UDP load balancing (see “udp disable enable stateless” on page 202).
cont <BWM Contract (1-1024)>	Sets the Bandwidth Management Contract. By default, the contract number is set at 256 for the Alteon AD3/180e and 1024 for Alteon AD4/184 Web switches.
tmout	Sets the Network Address Translation (NAT) session timeout in an even number of minutes (4–30). The default is set at 4 minutes.
log disable enable	Enables or disables logging filter messages. This option is disabled by default.

Table 7-11 Advanced Filter Menu (/cfg/slb/filt/adv) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

ack disable|enable

Enable or disable TCP ACK matching. Filters with this option enabled match only those frames that have the TCP ACK or RST flag set. This prevents servers from beginning a TCP connection (with a TCP SYN) from source TCP port 25. The server will drop any frames that have the ACK flag “spoofed” in them and will not allocate space for a new connection.

If cache is disabled, it will filter out on a per-packet basis. If the cache is enabled, then filtering is performed on a per-session basis. This option is disabled by default.

fwlb disable|enable

To ensure that the *stateful inspection* behavior of firewalls is maintained, a hashing algorithm is used to ensure that inbound packets and outbound packets for a pair of IPSA/IPDA traverse through the same firewall. If the dport is 80 or 21, enabling this option changes the hash of the filter from a WCR hash to a FWLB hash. By default, this option is disabled.

linklb

Enables or disables WAN Link Load Balancing. By default, this option is disabled.

idshash sip|dip|both

Sets the hash metric parameter for Intrusion Detection System Server Load Balancing

urlp disable|enable

Enables or disables URL parsing. By default, this option is disabled.

urlcont <URL path ID (1-128)> <BW contract (1-1024)>

Sets the URL path BW contract for this filter. Only use this command when a string is shared by multiple filters and each filter requires a separate bandwidth.

rurl

Note: Do not use the rurl option unless your Web switch is connected to an RURL-enabled Alteon iSD device. By default, this option is disabled.

Enables or disables the option to deny packets from passing through Layer 2 if the switch runs out of memory resources. It also sets the RURL destination port number or range for redirection.

ftpa disable|enable

Enables or disables active FTP Client Network Address Translation (NAT). When a client in active FTP mode sends a PORT command to a remote FTP server, the switch will look into the data part of the frame and replace the client's private IP address with a proxy IP (PIP) address. The real server port (RPORT) will be replaced with a proxy port (PPORT), that is PIP:PPORT. By default, this option is disabled.

rdsnp

Enables or disables WAP RADIUS Snooping capability of a filter. By default, this option is disabled.

cur

Displays the current advanced filter configuration.

/cfg/slb/filt <filter number>/adv/tcp

Advanced Filter TCP Configuration

[TCP flags advanced Menu]

urg

- Enable or disable TCP URG flag matching

ack

- Enable or disable TCP ACK flag matching

psh

- Enable or disable TCP PSH flag matching

rst

- Enable or disable TCP RST flag matching

syn

- Enable or disable TCP SYN flag matching

fin

- Enable or disable TCP FIN flag matching

cur

- Display current ACL TCP filter configuration

These commands can be used to configure packet filtering for specific TCP flags.

Table 7-12 Advanced Filter TCP Menu (/cfg/slb/filt/adv/tcp)

Command Syntax and Usage

urg disable|enable

Enables or disables TCP URG (urgent) flag matching. By default, this option is disabled.

ack disable|enable

Enables or disables TCP ACK (acknowledgement) flag matching. By default, this option is disabled.

psh disable|enable

Enables or disables TCP PSH (push) flag matching. By default, this option is disabled.

rst disable|enable

Enables or disables TCP RST (reset) flag matching. By default, this option is disabled.

syn disable|enable

Enables or disables TCP SYN (synchronize) flag matching. By default, this option is disabled.

fin disable|enable

Enables or disables TCP FIN (finish) flag matching. By default, this option is disabled.

cur

Displays the current Access Control List TCP filter configuration.

ICMP Message Types

The following ICMP message types are used with the `/cfg/slb/filt/adv/icmp` command. You can list all ICMP message types with the `/cfg/slb/filt/adv/icmp list` command.

Table 7-13 ICMP Message Types

Type #	Message Type	Description
0	echorep	ICMP echo reply
3	destun	ICMP destination unreachable
4	quench	ICMP source quench
5	redir	ICMP redirect
8	echoreq	ICMP echo request
9	rtradv	ICMP router advertisement
10	rtrsol	ICMP router solicitation
11	timex	ICMP time exceeded
12	param	ICMP parameter problem
13	timereq	ICMP timestamp request
14	timerep	ICMP timestamp reply
15	inforeq	ICMP information request
16	inforep	ICMP information reply
17	maskreq	ICMP address mask request
18	maskrep	ICMP address mask reply

/cfg/slb/port <port number>

Port SLB Configuration

[SLB port 1 Menu]

client

- Enable/disable client processing

server

- Enable/disable server processing

rts

- Enable/disable RTS processing

hotstan

- Enable/disable hot-standby processing

intersw

- Enable/disable inter-switch processing

proxy

- Enable/disable use of PIP for ingress traffic

pip

- Set Proxy IP address for port

filt

- Enable/disable filtering

add

- Add filter to port

rem

- Remove filter from port

idslb

- Enable/disable intrusion detection server load balancing

cur

- Display current port configuration

Switch software allows you to enable or disable processing independently for each type of Layer 4 traffic (client and server), expanding your topology options.

Table 7-14 Port Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/port)

Command Syntax and Usage

client disable|enable

For Server Load Balancing, the port can be enabled or disabled to process client Layer 4 traffic. Ports configured to process client request traffic bind servers to clients and provide address translation from the virtual server IP address to the real server IP address, re-mapping virtual server IP addresses and port values to real server IP addresses and ports. Traffic not associated with virtual servers is switched normally. Maximizing the number of these ports on the Layer 4 switch will improve the switch's potential for effective Server Load Balancing. This option is disabled by default.

server disable|enable

Ports configured to provide real server responses to client requests require real servers to be connected to the Layer 4 switch, directly or through a hub, router, or another switch. When server processing is enabled, the switch port re-maps real server IP addresses and Layer 4 port values to virtual server IP addresses and Layer 4 ports. Traffic not associated with virtual servers is switched normally. This option is disabled by default.

Table 7-14 Port Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/port) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

rts disable|enable

Enables or disables Return to Sender (RTS) load balancing on this port. This option is used for firewall load balancing or VPN load balancing applications. Enable **rts** on all client-side ports to ensure that traffic ingresses and egresses through the same port. This option is disabled by default. For more information on using **rts**, see the “Firewall Load Balancing” and “VPN Load Balancing” chapters in the *Web OS 9.0 Application Guide*.

hotstan disable|enable

Enables or disables hot-standby processing. Use this option and the **intersw** option in conjunction with VRRP hot-standby failover. This option is disabled by default.

intersw disable|enable

Enables or disables inter-switch processing. This option is enabled for ports connected to a peer switch and is disabled by default.

proxy disable|enable

Enables or disables a proxy for traffic that ingress this port. When the PIP is defined, client address information in Layer 4 requests is replaced with this proxy IP address.

In Server Load Balancing applications, this forces response traffic to return through the switch, rather than around it, as is possible in complex routing environments.

Proxies are also useful for Application Redirection and Network Address Translation (NAT). When **pip** is used with Application Redirection filters, each filter's **rport** parameter must also be defined (see **rport** on [page 206](#)). This option is disabled by default.

pip <proxy IP address>

Sets the proxy IP address for this port, using dotted decimal notation. When the PIP is defined, client address information in Layer 4 requests is replaced with this proxy IP address.

filter disable|enable

Enables or disables filtering on this port. Enabling the filter sets up the Real Server to look into the VPN session table. This option is disabled by default.

add <filter ID (1-2048)>

Adds a filter for use on this port.

rem <filter ID (1-2048)>

Removes a filter from use on this port.

idslb

Enables or disables Intrusion Detection System Server Load Balancing. This option is disabled by default.

cur

Displays current system parameters.

NOTE – When changing the filters on a given port, it may take some time before the port session information is updated so that the filter changes take effect. To make port filter changes take effect immediately, clear the session binding table for the port (see the `clear` command in Table 8-4 on page 240).

/cfg/slb/gslb

Global SLB Configuration

[Global SLB Menu]	
site	- Remote Site Menu
lookup	- Network Preference Lookup Menu
tll	- Set Time To Live of DNS resource records
mincon	- Set minimum number of site connections
inter	- Set interval between remote site updates
weight	- Set local weight
dns	- Enable or disable DNS handoffs
local	- Enable or disable DNS responses with only local addresses
one	- Enable or disable DNS responses with only one address
alway	- Enable or disable DNS responses at least one address
geo	- Enable or disable geographic awareness
http	- Enable or disable HTTP redirects
usern	- Enable or disable HTTP redirect to real server name
on	- Globally turn Global SLB ON
off	- Globally turn Global SLB OFF
cur	- Display current Global SLB configuration

NOTE – The `local`, `one`, `alway`, and `geo` options have no effect on `lookup`.

Table 7-15 Global SLB Menu Options (/cfg/slb/gslb)

Command Syntax and Usage

- site** <remote site (1-64)>
Displays the Remote Site Menu for one of up to 64 remote sites. To view menu options, see [page 220](#). By default, this option is disabled.
- lookup**
Displays the Global SLB Lookup Menu. The options in this menu will overwrite the geographic awareness (IANA table) during DNS queries. To view menu options, see [page 221](#).

Table 7-15 Global SLB Menu Options (/cfg/slb/gslb) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

tll <*time to live in seconds (0-65535)*>

Specifies the duration (from 0 to 65535 seconds, with default at 60) that the DNS response from the switch (indicating site of best service) will remain in the cache of DNS servers. A lower value may increase the ability of the GSLB system to adjust to sudden changes in traffic load, but will generate more DNS traffic. Higher numbers may reduce the amount of DNS traffic, but may slow GSLB's response to sudden traffic changes.

mincon <*minimum connections, 0-65535*>

Sets the minimum number of available site connections. The default is set at 1024. If the site's available sessions fall below this value, traffic won't be redirected to the site. A site is not eligible for more requests (such as DNS or HTTP redirects) once the number of available connections at a site drops below this threshold.

inter <*interval in minutes (1-120)*>

Sets the time between Distributed Site State Protocol (DSSP) updates between this switch and its peers. The range is between 1 and 120 minutes. The default is 1 minute.

weight <*server weight (1-48)*>

Sets the local weight. The higher the weight value, the more connections that will be directed to the local site. The default is 1. The response time of this site is divided by **this weight** before the best site is assigned to a client. **Remote site** response times are divided by the **real server weight** before selection occurs.

dns disable|enable

Enables or disables DNS handoffs to peer sites by this switch. This should be enabled for proper GSLB operation. If disabled, whenever the switch receives a DNS request for a configured service, it will respond only with its own virtual server IP address, regardless of performance or load considerations. This option is enabled by default.

local disable|enable

Enables or disables switch responses to DNS queries with local virtual server IP addresses. This option is disabled by default. When enabled, the switch will always respond to DNS queries by providing a local virtual server IP address, as long as the virtual server IP address has healthy real servers with an aggregate number of available connections equal to the total from each server's configured maxcons value, minus the server's current number of connections. When the real servers for the local virtual server IP addresses are unavailable or saturated, the switch will respond to DNS requests using normal GSLB rules.

one disable|enable

Enables or disables DNS responses with only one address. At most one IP address is included in each DNS response. This option is disabled by default.

Table 7-15 Global SLB Menu Options (/cfg/slb/gslb) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
always disable enable	Enables or disables DNS responses (with) at least one address. At least one IP address is included in each DNS response. Even if all remote sites cannot handle another request, the local VIP is returned in DNS response to eliminate long DNS timeouts caused by an empty response. This option is disabled by default.
geo disable enable	Enables or disables geographic awareness, such as the IANA table. This option is enabled by default. If this option is disabled, all clients and sites will be assumed to exist in the same geographic region, allowing all sites to be eligible for each client.
http disable enable	Enables or disables HTTP redirects to peer sites by this switch. When enabled (default), this switch will redirect client requests to peer sites if its own real servers fail or have reached their maximum connection limits. If disabled, the switch will not perform HTTP Redirects, but will instead drop requests for new connections and cause the client's browser to eventually issue a new DNS request.
usern disable enable	Enables or disables an HTTP redirect to a real server name. When a site redirects a client to another site using an HTTP redirect, the client is redirected to the new site's IP address. This option is disabled by default. If usern is enabled, the client will be redirected to the domain name specified by the remote real server name plus virtual server domain name: <i><remote real server name> . <virtual server domain name></i>
on	Activates Global Server Load Balancing (GSLB) for this switch. This option can be performed only once the optional GSLB software is activated (refer to “Activating Optional Software” on page 244).
off	Turns GSLB off for this switch. Any active remote sites will still perform GSLB services with each other, but will not hand off requests to this switch. By default, GSLB is turned off.
cur	Displays current Global SLB configuration.

/cfg/slb/gslb/site <site number>

GSLB Remote Site Configuration

```
[Remote site 1 Menu]
  prima - Set primary switch IP address of remote site
  secon - Set secondary switch IP address of remote site
  name  - Set remote site name
  update - Enable or disable remote site updates
  enable - Enable remote site
  dis    - Disable remote site
  del     - Delete remote site
  cur     - Display current remote site configuration
```

Up to 64 remote sites can be configured.

Table 7-16 GSLB Remote Site Menu Options (/cfg/slb/gslb/site)

Command Syntax and Usage

prima <server IP address>

Defines the IP interface IP address of the primary switch at the remote site used for Global Server Load Balancing. Use dotted decimal notation.

secon <server IP address>

If the remote site is configured with a redundant switch, enter the IP address of the IP interface for the remote secondary switch here. If the remote site primary switch fails, the local switch will address the remote site secondary switch instead.

name <31 character name | "none">

Sets the name of the remote site. The default is set at **none**.

update disable|enable

Enables or disables remote site updates. If enabled (default), this switch will send regular Distributed Site State Protocol (DSSP) updates to its remote peers using HTTP port 80. If disabled, the switch will not send state updates. If your local firewall does not permit this traffic, disable the updates.

Note: When **update** is enabled, Global Server Load Balancing uses service port 80 on the IP interface for DSSP updates. By default, the Web OS Web-based interface also uses port 80. Both services cannot use the same port. If both are enabled, configure the Web OS Browser-Based Interface (BBI) to use a different service port (see the /cfg/sys/wport option [on page 121](#)).

ena

Enables this remote site for use with Global Server Load Balancing.

dis

Disables this remote site. The switch will no longer use this remote site for Global Server Load Balancing.

Table 7-16 GSLB Remote Site Menu Options (/cfg/slb/gslb/site) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
del	Removes this remote site from operation and deletes its configuration.
cur	Displays the current remote site configuration.

/cfg/slb/gslb/lookup

GSLB Lookup Configuration

[Global SLB Lookup Menu]

- network - Internet Network Preference Menu
- dname - Set domain name for internal lookup table
- lookups - Enable or disable network preference lookups
- cur - Display current lookup configuration

Table 7-17 GSLB Lookup Menu Options (/cfg/slb/gslb/lookup)

Command Syntax and Usage	
network <preference number (1-128)>	Displays the Internet Network Preference Menu. If enabled, the switch responds to DNS requests based on the configured dname and Internet Preference Menu option settings. To view menu options, see page 222 .
dname <domain name> none	Sets the domain name for the internal lookup table. The maximum number of characters that a domain name can use is 34. The default is set at none .
lookups disable enable	Enables or disables network preference lookups. This option is disabled by default.
cur	Displays the current lookup configuration.

/cfg/slb/gslb/lookup/network

<preference number>

GSLB Internet Network Preference Lookups Configuration

[Network 1 Menu]	
sip	- Set Source IP address
mask	- Set net mask
vip1	- Set VIP address
vip2	- Set VIP address
del	- Delete internet network entry
cur	- Display current internet network entry configuration

Up to 128 network preference numbers can be set. You can overwrite the IANA table by defining client networks, using the options in this menu. You should use regular GSLB to respond to a DNS request under the following conditions:

- Queried domain is not matched.
- Client IP address doesn't match address in the Network Preference Menu and no default entry is configured.
- There is an entry match in the Network Preference Menu. However, VIP1 and VIP2 are not healthy—they are down or over the minimum number of connections (**mincon**).

The *default entry* is one where the source IP address and mask are not configured (both are 0.0.0.0) and only the VIP1 and VIP 2 are configured. All client networks not in the Network Preference Menu will use this entry to respond to a DNS request.

Table 7-18 GSLB Internet Network Preference Menu Options
(/cfg/slb/gslb/lookup/network)

Command Syntax and Usage

sip <IP address>

Sets the source IP address. Specify an IP address in dotted decimal notation, or “**any**”. A range of IP addresses is produced when used with the **mask** option.

mask <IP address>

This IP address mask is used with the source IP SIP address to find a correct virtual server IP address to respond to a DNS request.

vip1 <IP address>

Sets the first virtual server IP address. The address can either be a local or remote virtual server. The switch returns the VIP address with the least response time that is over the **mincon** (minimum number of available connections).

Table 7-18 GSLB Internet Network Preference Menu Options
(/cfg/slb/gslb/lookup/network)

Command Syntax and Usage	
vip2 <IP address>	Sets the second virtual server IP address.
del	Deletes the specified network entry.
cur	Displays the current Internet network entry configuration.

/cfg/slb/url

URL Resource Definition

[URL Resource Definition Menu]

redir - Web Cache Redirection Menu

lb - Server Load Balancing Menu

Table 7-19 URL Resource Definition Menu Options (/cfg/slb/url)

Command Syntax and Usage	
redir	Displays the Web Cache Redirection Menu. To view menu options, see page 224 .
lb	Displays the Server Load Balancing Menu. To view menu options, see page 225 .

/cfg/slb/url/redir

Web Cache Redirection Configuration

[Web Cache Redirection Menu]	
add	- Add URL expression
rem	- Remove URL expression
urlal	- Enable or disable auto-ALLOW for non-GETs to origin servers
cookie	- Enable or disable auto-ALLOW for Cookie to origin servers
nocache	- Enable or disable no-cache control header to origin servers
hash	- Enable or disable URL hashing based on URI
header	- Enable or disable server load balance based on HTTP header
cur	- Display current URL expression table

Table 7-20 Web Cache Redirection Menu Options (/cfg/slb/url/redir)

Command Syntax and Usage

add <string>
Adds the URL expression.

rem <string>
Removes the URL expression.

urlal disable|enable
Enables or disables auto-ALLOW for non-GETs to origin servers.

- If this command is enabled, the switch will redirect all non-GET requests to the origin server.
- If this command is disabled, the switch will compare the URI against the expression table to determine whether all non-GET requests should be redirected to a cache server or origin server.

This option is enabled by default.

cookie disable|enable
Enables or disables auto-ALLOW for cookie to origin servers.

- If this command is enabled, the switch will redirect all requests that contain *Cookie:* in the HTTP header to the origin server.
- If this command is disabled, the switch will compare the URI against the expression table to determine whether it should redirect all requests that contain *Cookie:* in the HTTP header to a cache server or origin server.

This option is disabled by default.

Table 7-20 Web Cache Redirection Menu Options (/cfg/slb/url/redir) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
nocache disable enable	Enables or disables no-cache control header to origin servers. ■ If this command is enabled, the switch will redirect all requests that contain <i>Cache-Control: no-cache</i> in HTTP/1.1 header, or <i>Pragma: no-cache</i> in HTTP/1.0 header to the origin server. ■ If this command is disabled, the switch will compare the URI against the expression table to determine whether it should redirect requests that contain <i>Cache-Control: no-cache</i> in HTTP/1.1 header, or <i>Pragma: no-cache</i> in HTTP/1.0 header to a cache server or origin server. This option is enabled by default.
hash disable enable	Enables or disables URL hashing based on the URI. ■ If hashing is enabled, you can set the length of URI that will be used to hash into the cache server. ■ If hashing is disabled, the switch will only use the host header field to calculate the hash key. This option is disabled by default.
header disable enable	Enables or disables server load balancing based on HTTP header. This option is disabled by default.
cur	Displays the current URL expression table.

/cfg/slb/url/lb

Server Load Balance Resource Configuration

[Server Loadbalance Resource Menu]

message - Set error message

add - Add URL string for load balance

rename - Rename URL string for load balance

rem - Remove URL string for load balance

cont - Set BW contract for the URL string

cur - Display current URL strings

Table 7-21 URL Cache Redirection Menu Options (/cfg/slb/url/lb)

Command Syntax and Usage	
message <64 byte error message>	Sets the message that will be displayed when an error occurs. The default message is “No available server to handle this request.”

Table 7-21 URL Cache Redirection Menu Options (/cfg/slb/url/lb)

Command Syntax and Usage	
add <URL path string>	Adds the URL path string for load balancing.
rename <URL path string>	Renames the URL path string for load balancing.
rem <URL path ID>	Removes the URL path string from load balancing.
cont <URL path ID (1-128)> <BWM contract (1-1024)>	Sets the Bandwidth Management contract for a specified string for the URL path ID.
cur	Displays the current URL paths.

/cfg/slb/rurl

RURL Configuration



CAUTION—Do not use the RURL configuration menu and the sub menus unless the Web switch is connected to an Alteon iSD, running an RURL application.

[RURL Options Menu]	
deny	- Enable/disable RURL deny pass-through
dport	- RURL destination port menu
cur	- Display current RURL configuration

Table 7-22 RURL Options Menu (/cfg/slb/rurl)

Command Syntax and Usage

deny disable|enable

Enables or disables the option to deny packets from passing through Layer 2 if the switch runs out of buffer resources. This option is disabled by default.

dport

Sets the RURL destination port number or range for redirection. To view menu options, see [page 227](#)

cur

Displays the current RURL configuration.

/cfg/slb/rurl/dport

RURL Destination Port Table Configuration

[RURL Destination Port Table Menu]	
add	- Add RURL destination port
rem	- Remove RURL destination port
cur	- Display current RURL destination port table

Table 7-23 RURL Destination Port Table Menu (/cfg/slb/rurl/dport)

Command Syntax and Usage

add <port>|<port>-<port>

Adds RURL destination port.

Table 7-23 RURL Destination Port Table Menu (/cfg/slb/rurl/dport)

Command Syntax and Usage	
rem <entry ID>	Removes RURL destination port.
cur	Displays current RURL destination port table.

/cfg/slb/wap

WAP Configuration

[WAP Options Menu]	
tpcp	- Enable/disable WAP TPCP external notification
debug	- WAP debug level
cur	- Display current WAP configuration

Table 7-24 WAP Configuration Menu Options (/cfg/slb/wap)

Command Syntax and Usage	
tpcp disable enable	Enables or disables the TPCP external notification for Add/Delete session requests. This option is disabled by default.
debug	Sets the debug level for tracing the WAP related messages. The default is set at 0.
cur	Displays the current WAP configuration

/cfg/slb/sync

Synchronize Peer Switch Configuration

[Config Synchronization Menu]

peer	- Synch peer switch menu
filt	- Enable or disable syncing filter configuration
ports	- Enable or disable syncing port configuration
prios	- Enable or disable syncing VRRP priorities
pips	- Enable or disable syncing proxy IP addresses
bwm	- Enable or disable syncing BWM configuration
state	- Enable or disable syncing persistent session state
update	- Set stateful failover update period
cur	- Display current Layer 4 sync configuration

To synchronize the configuration between two switches, a peer must be configured and enabled on each switch. Switches being synchronized must use the same administrator password. Peers are sent SLB, FILT, and VRRP configuration updates using **/oper/slb/synch**.

Table 7-25 Synchronization Menu Options (/cfg/slb/sync)

Command Syntax and Usage

peer <peer switch number (1-2)>
Displays the Sync Peer Switch Menu. This option is enabled by default. To view menu options, see page 230 .
filt disable enable
Enables or disables synchronizing filter configuration.
ports disable enable
Enables or disables synchronizing Layer 4 port configuration. This option is enabled by default.
prios disable enable
Enables or disables syncing VRRP priorities. This option is enabled by default.
pips disable enable
Enables or disables synchronizing proxy IP addresses. This option is disabled by default.
bwm disable enable
Enables or disables synchronizing Bandwidth Management configuration between Master and backup switches. This option is enabled by default.
state disable enable
Enables or disables stateful failover for synchronizing the persistent session state. This option is disabled by default.

Table 7-25 Synchronization Menu Options (/cfg/slb/sync) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
update <seconds, 1–60>	Sets the stateful failover update interval. The active server sends update packets of persistent binding entries to the backup switch at the specified update interval. The default value is 30 seconds.
cur	Displays the current Layer 4 synchronization configuration.

/cfg/slb/sync/peer <peer switch number> Peer Switch Configuration

[Peer Switch 1 Menu]	
addr	- Set peer switch IP address
ena	- Enable peer switch
dis	- Disable peer switch
del	- Delete peer switch
cur	- Display current peer switch configuration

To synchronize the configuration between two switches, a peer must be configured and enabled on each switch. Switches being synchronized must use the same administrator password.

Table 7-26 Synch Peer Switch Menu Options (/cfg/slb/sync/peer)

Command Syntax and Usage	
addr <IP address>	Sets the peer switch IP address. The default is 0.0.0.0
ena	Enables the peer for this switch. By default, this option is disabled.
dis	Disables the peer for this switch.
del	Deletes the peer for this switch
cur	Displays the current peer switch configuration.

/cfg/slb/adv

Advanced Layer 4 Configuration

[Layer 4 Advanced Menu]	
script	- Scriptable Health Check Menu
waphc	- WAP Health Check Menu
imask	- Set virtual and real IP address mask
mnet	- Set management network
mmask	- Set management subnet mask
pmask	- Set persistent mask
secret	- Set RADIUS secret
minter	- Set interval of response and bandwidth metric updates
idslb	- Set real server group number for IDSLB
direct	- Enable/disable Direct Access Mode
grace	- Enable/disable graceful real server failure
matrix	- Enable/disable Virtual Matrix Architecture
tcp	- Enable/disable Transparent Proxy Cache Protocol
fastage	- Session table fast-age (1 sec) period bit shift
slowage	- Session table slow-age (2 min) period bit shift
cur	- Display current Layer 4 advanced configuration

Table 7-27 Layer 4 Advanced Menu Options (/cfg/slb/adv)

Command Syntax and Usage

script *<health script number (1-8)>*
Displays the Scriptable Health Check Menu. To view menu options, see [page 233](#).

waphc
Displays the WAP Health Check Menu. To view menu options, see [page 234](#).

imask *<IP subnet mask (such as 255.255.255.0)>*
Configures the real and virtual server IP address mask using dotted decimal notation. The default is 255.255.255.255.

mnet *<IP address>*
If defined, management traffic with this source IP address will be allowed direct (non-Layer 4) access to the real servers. Specify an IP address in dotted decimal notation. A range of IP addresses is produced when used with the **mmask** option.

mmask *<IP subnet mask (such as 255.255.255.0)>*
This IP address mask is used with the **mnet** to select management traffic which is allowed direct access to real servers. The default is 255.255.255.255.

pmask *<IP subnet mask (such as 255.255.255.0)>*
Sets persistent mask. The default is 255.255.255.255.

Table 7-27 Layer 4 Advanced Menu Options (/cfg/slb/adv) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage

secret <1-32 character secret>

To perform application health checking to a RADIUS server, the network administrator must configure two parameters in the switch: the /cfg/slb/secret value and the cntnt parameter with a username:password value. The secret value is a field of up to 32 alphanumeric characters that is used by the switch to encrypt a password during the RSA Message Digest Algorithm (MD5) and by the RADIUS server to decrypt the password during verification. The default is none.

minter <1-256 (number of seconds between updates)>

This command sets the interval of response and bandwidth metric updates. The default is set at 10.

idslb <1-256>

This command sets the real server group number for Intrusion Detection System Server Load Balancing. The copied incoming sessions will be load-balanced across the servers in this real server group. The default is set at 1.

direct disable|enable

Enable/disables Direct Access Mode to real servers/services. This option also allows any virtual server to load balance any real server. By default, this option is disabled.

grace disable|enable

Enables or disables graceful real server failure. Allows existing connections to newly failed server to gracefully continue. By default, this option is disabled.

matrix disable|enable

Enables or disables the use of Virtual Matrix Architecture on the Web switch. By default, this option is enabled.

tpcp disable|enable

Enables or disables the TPCP (Transparent Proxy Cache Protocol). This command is used for security reasons—the UDP port can be closed. By default, this option is disabled.

fastage <0-7>

Controls how frequently a *fastage scan* is performed. The default interval is two seconds. Each incremental increase of the value doubles the length of the interval.

The fastage scan is used to remove TCP sessions that have been closed with a FIN and sessions that have been identified by the slowage scan as idle for the maximum allowed period. If a large value of slowage is used, a session can remain in the session table for minutes. The default is 0.

slowage <0-15>

Controls how frequently a *slowage scan* is performed. The default interval is two minutes. Each incremental increase of the value doubles the length of the interval. (Value is set in bits rather than seconds, which causes the time to double per increment).

The slowage scan is used to remove idle or non-TCP sessions from the session at the specified intervals. If a large value of slowage is used, a session can remain in the session table for months. The default is 0.

Table 7-27 Layer 4 Advanced Menu Options (/cfg/slb/adv) (Continued)

Command Syntax and Usage	
cur	Displays the current Layer 4 advanced configuration.

/cfg/slb/adv/script

Scriptable Health Checks Configuration

[Health Script 1 Menu]
open - Add open command to end of script
send - Add send command to end of script
expect - Add expect command to end of script
close - Add close command to end of script
rem - Remove last command from script
del - Delete script
cur - Display current script configuration

The Health Script menu provides commands that can be used to define the health “script.” The total number of characters cannot exceed 1024 bytes. Up to eight scripts can be configured.

Table 7-28 Scriptable Health Check Menu Options (/cfg/slb/adv/script)

Command Syntax and Usage	
open <real port or name, eg, http>	Sets the TCP port to be opened.
send <text string>	Sends an ASCII string through open TCP port. For example, an HTTP request, such as, “GET /default.asp HTTP/1.1\r\n\r\nHOST: www.alteon.com\r\n\r\n.”>
expect <text string>	Expects an ASCII string for successful health check on open TCP port, such as an HTTP response: HTTP/1.1 200
close	Closes TCP connection.
rem	Removes the last entered line from the script.
del	Deletes the current script.

Table 7-28 Scriptable Health Check Menu Options (/cfg/slb/adv/script)

Command Syntax and Usage

cur
Lists the current script configuration.

/cfg/slb/adv/waphc

WAP Health Checks Configuration

[WAP Health Check Menu]

- wspport - WSP port number to health check
- wtlsprt - WTLS port number to health check
- offset - Offset in received WSP packet
- sndcnt - Content to be sent to the WAP gateway
- rcvcnt - Content to be received from the WAP gateway
- cur - Display current WAP health check configuration

Table 7-29 WAP Health Check Menu Options (/cfg/slb/adv/waphc)

Command Syntax and Usage

wspport <port number (0-65534)>
Enter the port number on which WSP health checks will be performed. The default port number is 9200.

wtlsprt <port number (0-65534)>
Enter the port number on which WTLS health checks will be performed. The default port number is 9203.

offset <WSP receive offset (0-256)>
Enter the receive offset value content of the received WSP packages. An offset value of 0 (default) sets the switch to start comparisons from the beginning of the content of the received packet.

sndcnt <hexadecimal string>
Enter a hexadecimal string that represents a connectionless WSP request to a WSP gateway. This string will be delivered to the WSP gateway.

rcvcnt <hexadecimal string>
Enter a hexadecimal string that represents the content that the switch expects to receive from the WSP gateway.

cur
Displays the current WAP Health Check configuration.



CHAPTER 8

The Operations Menu

The Operations Menu is generally used for commands that affect switch performance immediately, but do not alter permanent switch configurations. For example, you can use the Operations Menu to immediately disable a port (without the need to apply or save the change), with the understanding that when the switch is reset, the port returns to its normally configured operation.

/oper

Operations Menu

[Operations Menu]

port	- Operational Port Menu
mirr	- Operational Mirroring Menu
slb	- Operational Server Load Balancing Menu
vrrp	- Operational Virtual Router Redundancy Menu
bwm	- Operational Bandwidth Management Menu
ip	- Operational IP Menu
swkey	- Enter key to enable software feature
rmkey	- Enter software feature to be removed

The commands of the Operations Menu enable you to alter switch operational characteristics without affecting switch configuration.

Port Mirroring menu options are accessible only to the Alteon AD4 and Alteon 184 Web-Switches.

Table 8-1 Operations Menu Options (/oper)

Command Syntax and Usage	
port <port as number (1-9)>	Displays the Operational Port Menu. To view menu options, see page 237 .
mirr	Displays the Operational Mirroring Menu. To view menu options, see page 238 .
slb	Displays the Operational Layer 4 Menu. To view menu options, see page 240 .
vrrp	Displays the Operational Virtual Router Redundancy Menu. To view menu options, see page 241 .
bwm	Operational Bandwidth Management Menu. To view menu options, see page 242 .
ip	Displays the IP Operations Menu, which has one sub-menu/option, the Operational Border Gateway Protocol Menu. To view menu options, see page 241 .
swkey <16-hex-digit key to enable software feature>	Enter key to enable software feature. For details, see page 244 .
rmkey <software feature to be removed>	Enter software feature to be removed. For details, see page 245 .

/oper/port *<port number>*

Operations-Level Port Options

[Operations Port 1 Menu]

rmon	- Enable/Disable RMON for port
ena	- Enable port
dis	- Disable port
cur	- Current port state

Operations-level port options are used for temporarily disabling or enabling a port, and for changing Remote Monitoring (RMON) status on a port.

Table 8-2 Operations-Level Port Menu Options (/oper/port)

Command Syntax and Usage

rmon disable|enable

Temporarily enables/disables RMON on the port. The port will be returned to its configured operation mode when the switch is reset.

ena

Temporarily enables the port. The port will be returned to its configured operation mode when the switch is reset.

dis

Temporarily disables the port. The port will be returned to its configured operation mode when the switch is reset.

cur

Displays the current settings for the port.

/oper/mirr

Operations-Level Port Mirroring Options

```
[Port Mirroring Menu]
  to      - Set "Monitoring" port
  from    - Set "Mirrored" port
  dir     - Set Direction [in, out, both]
  tmout   - Set Mirroring Timeout value
  ena     - Enable Port Mirroring
  dis     - Disable Port Mirroring
  cur     - Display current Port Mirroring configuration
```

The Port Mirroring Menu is used to configure, enable, and disable the port monitor. When enabled, Layer 2 network packets being sent and/or received on a target port are duplicated and sent to a monitor port. By attaching a network analyzer to the monitor port, you can collect detailed information about your network performance and usage.

NOTE – Layer 3 and Layer 4 traffic is not mirrored through this facility.

NOTE – Port Mirroring cannot be used simultaneously with Layer 4 services (Server Load Balancing or Application Redirection) on any switch port connected to a server either directly, or through another switch or hub. For Server Load Balancing, this limitation applies to any switch port configured with server processing enabled. For Application Redirection, this limitation applies to any switch port that has a cache server attached to it directly or indirectly. Use your network analyzer with a full-duplex pass-through connection or an Ethernet hub when troubleshooting a switch port connected to a server providing Layer 4 services.

Table 8-3 Port Mirroring Menu Options (/oper/mirr)

Command Syntax and Usage	
to <port number (1-9)>	This defines the monitoring port. When port mirroring is enabled, packets received and/or transmitted by the mirrored port will be duplicated to the switch port specified in this command.
from <port number (1-9)>	This defines the mirrored port. When port mirroring is enabled, packets received and/or sent by the port specified in this command will be sent to the monitor port.
dir in out both	This determines which type of packets will be sent to the monitor port: ■ in = packets received at the mirrored port ■ out = packets sent from the mirrored port ■ both = packets sent and received by the mirrored port
tmout <seconds (0-86400)>	Port mirroring will be automatically disabled (regardless of port state) after the time-out period specified in this command. Valid times are from 0 (does not time-out) to 86400 seconds.
ena	Turns port mirroring on.
dis	Turns port mirroring off.
cur	Displays the current mirroring settings.

/oper/slb

Operations-Level SLB Options

[Server Load Balancing Operations Menu]	
sync	- Synchronize SLB, VRRP and other configurations on peers
ena	- Enable real server
dis	- Disable real server
clear	- Clear session table
cur	- Current layer 4 operational state

When the optional Layer 4 software is enabled, the operations-level Server Load Balancing options are used for temporarily disabling or enabling real servers and synchronizing the configuration between the active/active switches.

Table 8-4 Server Load Balancing Operations Menu Options (/oper/slb)

Command Syntax and Usage	
sync	Synchronizes the SLB, filter, and VRRP configuration on a peer switch (a switch that owns the IP address). To take effect, peers must be configured on the Web switches and the administrator password on the Web switches must be identical.
ena <real server number (1-255)>	Temporarily enables a real server. The real server will be returned to its configured operation mode when the switch is reset.
dis <real server number (1-255)>	Temporarily disables a real server, removing it from operation within its real server group and virtual server. The real server will be returned to its configured operation mode when the switch is reset.
clear	Clears all session tables and allows port filter changes to take effect immediately. Note: This command disrupts current Server Load Balancing and Application Redirection sessions.
cur	Displays the current SLB operational state.

/oper/vrrp

Operations-Level VRRP Options

[VRRP Operations Menu]
back - Set virtual router to backup

This menu is used to force a master virtual router to become backup router.

Table 8-5 Virtual Router Redundancy Operations Menu Options (/oper/vrrp)

Command Syntax and Usage

back *<virtual router number (1-256)>*

Forces the specified master virtual router on this switch into backup mode. This is generally used for passing master control back to a preferred switch once the preferred switch has been returned to service after a failure. When this command is executed, the current master gives up control and initiates a new election by temporarily advertising its own priority level as 0 (lowest). After the new election, the virtual router forced into backup mode by this command will resume master control in the following cases:

- This switch owns the virtual router (the IP addresses of the virtual router and its IP interface are the same)
- This switch’s virtual router has a higher priority and preemption is enabled.
- There are no other virtual routers available to take master control.

/oper/bwm

Operations-Level Bandwidth Management Options

[Bandwidth Management Operations Menu] sndhist - Send BW History to SMTP server

The `sndhist` command is used to send bandwidth management statistics to a system administrator specified under `/cfg/bwm/user` (see [page 175](#)).

Table 8-6 Bandwidth Operations Menu Options (/oper/bwm/sndhist)

Command Syntax and Usage
sndhist Sends the bandwidth history to an SMTP server.

/oper/ip

Operations-Level IP Options

[IP Operations Menu]
bgp - Operational Border Gateway Protocol Menu

Table 8-7 IP Operations Menu Options (/oper/ip)

Command Syntax and Usage

bgp
Displays the Border Gateway Protocol Operations Menu, shown below.

/oper/ip/bgp

Operations-Level BGP Options

[Border Gateway Protocol Operations Menu]
start - Start peer session
stop - Stop peer session
cur - Current BGP operational state

Table 8-8 IP Operations Menu Options (/oper/ip)

Command Syntax and Usage

start <peer number (1-4)>
Starts the peer session.

stop <peer number (1-4)>
Stops the peer session.

cur
Displays the current BGP operational state.

/oper/swkey

Activating Optional Software

The **swkey** option is used for activating any optional software you have purchased for your switch.

Before you can activate optional software, you must obtain a software license from your Alteon WebSystems representative or authorized reseller. One software license is needed for each switch where the optional software is to be used. You will receive a Licence Certificate for each software license purchased.

To obtain a software key, you must register each License Certificate with Alteon WebSystems and provide the MAC address of the Web OS switch that will run the optional software. Alteon WebSystems will then provide a License Password.

NOTE – Each License Password will work only on the specific switch which has the MAC address you provided when registering your Licence Certificate.

Once you have your License Password, perform the following actions:

1. **Connect to the switch’s command line interface and log in as the administrator (see [Chapter 1, “The Command Line Interface”](#)).**
2. **At the Main# prompt, enter:**

```
Main# oper
```

3. **At the Operations# prompt, enter:**

```
Operations# swkey
```

4. **When prompted, enter your 16-digit software key code. For example:**

```
Enter Software Key: 123456789ABCDEF
```

If the correct code is entered, you will see the following message:

```
Valid software key entered.  
Software feature enabled.
```

/oper/rmkey

Removing Optional Software

The **rmkey** option is used for deactivating any optional software. Deactivated software is still present in switch memory and can be reactivated at any later time.

To deactivate optional software, enter the following at the Operations Menu:

```
Operations# rmkey
```

When prompted, enter the code for software to be removed. For example:

```
Enter Software Feature to be removed: [SLB]|GSLB|WCR: SLB
```


CHAPTER 9

The Boot Options Menu

To use the Boot Options Menu, you must be logged in to the switch as the administrator. The Boot Options Menu provides options for:

- Selecting a switch software image to be used when the switch is next reset
- Selecting a configuration block to be used when the switch is next reset
- Downloading or uploading a new software image to the switch via TFTP

To access the Boot Options Menu, at the Main Menu prompt, enter:

```
Main# boot
```

The Boot Options Menu is displayed:

```
[Boot Options Menu]
  image - Select software image to use on next boot
  conf  - Select config block to use on next boot
  gting - Download new software image via TFTP
  ptimg - Upload selected software image via TFTP
  reset - Reset switch [WARNING: Restarts Spanning Tree]
  cur   - Display current boot options
```

Each of these options is discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

Updating the Switch Software Image

The switch software image is the executable code running on the Web switch. A version of the image ships with the switch, and comes pre-installed on the device. As new versions of the image are released, you can upgrade the software running on your switch.

Upgrading the software image on your switch requires the following:

- Loading the new image onto a TFTP server on your network
- Downloading the new image from the TFTP server to your switch
- Selecting the new software image to be loaded into switch memory the next time the switch is reset

Downloading New Software to Your Web Switch

The switch can store up to two different software images, called `image1` and `image2`, as well as boot software, called `boot`. When you download new software, you must specify where it should be placed: either into `image1`, `image2`, or `boot`.

For example, if your active image is currently loaded into `image1`, you would probably load the new image software into `image2`. This lets you test the new software and reload the original active image (stored in `image1`), if needed.

To download a new software to your switch, you will need the following:

- The image or boot software loaded on a TFTP server on your network
- The hostname or IP address of the TFTP server
- The name of the new software image or boot file

NOTE – The DNS parameters must be configured if specifying hostnames. See “[Domain Name System Configuration](#)” on page 147).

When the above requirements are met, use the following procedure to download the new software to your switch.

1. **At the Boot Options# prompt, enter:**

```
Boot Options# gting
```


2. Enter the name of the switch software to be replaced:

```
Enter name of switch software image to be replaced  
["image1"/"image2"/"boot"]: <image>
```

3. Enter the hostname or IP address of the TFTP server.

```
Enter hostname or IP address of TFTP server: <server name or IP address>
```

4. Enter the name of the new software file on the server.

```
Enter name of file on TFTP server: <filename>
```

The exact form of the name will vary by TFTP server. However, the file location is normally relative to the TFTP directory (usually `/tftpboot`).

5. The system prompts you to confirm your request.

You should next select a software image to run, as described below.

Selecting a Software Image to Run

You can select which software image (`image1` or `image2`) you want to run in switch memory for the next reboot.

1. At the `Boot Options#` prompt, enter:

```
Boot Options# image
```

2. Enter the name of the image you want the switch to use upon the next boot.

The system informs you of which image is currently set to be loaded at the next reset, and prompts you to enter a new choice:

```
Currently set to use switch software "image1" on next reset.  
Specify new image to use on next reset ["image1"/"image2"]:
```

Uploading a Software Image from Your Web Switch

You can upload a software image from the switch to a TFTP server.

1. At the **Boot Options#** prompt, enter:

```
Boot Options# ptimg
```

2. The system prompts you for information. Enter the desired image:

```
Enter name of switch software image to be uploaded  
["image1"|"image2"|"boot"]: <image>
```

3. Enter the name or the IP address of the TFTP server:

```
Enter hostname or IP address of TFTP server: <server name or IP address>
```

4. Enter the name of the file into which the image will be uploaded on the TFTP server:

```
Enter name of file on TFTP server: <filename>
```

5. The system then requests confirmation of what you have entered. To have the file uploaded, enter **Y**.

```
image2 currently contains Software Version 8.3.12  
that was downloaded at 15:05:47 Fri Dec 1, 2000.  
Upload will transfer image2 (778656 bytes) to file "test"  
on TFTP server test.  
Confirm upload operation [y/n]: y
```

Selecting a Configuration Block

When you make configuration changes to the Web switch, you must save the changes so that they are retained beyond the next time the switch is reset. When you perform the **save** command, your new configuration changes are placed in the *active* configuration block. The previous configuration is copied into the *backup* configuration block.

There is also a *factory* configuration block. This holds the default configuration set by the factory when your Web switch was manufactured. Under certain circumstances, it may be desirable to reset the switch configuration to the default. This can be useful when a custom-configured Web switch is moved to a network environment where it will be reconfigured for a different purpose.

Use the following procedure to set which configuration block you want the switch to load the next time it is reset:

1. **At the Boot Options# prompt, enter:**

```
Boot Options# conf
```

2. **Enter the name of the configuration block you want the switch to use:**

The system informs you of which configuration block is currently set to be loaded at the next reset, and prompts you to enter a new choice:

```
Currently set to use active configuration block on next reset.  
Specify new block to use ["active"/"backup"/"factory"]:
```

Resetting the Web Switch

You can reset the switch to make your software image file and configuration block changes occur.

NOTE – Resetting the switch causes the Spanning Tree Protocol to restart. This process can be lengthy, depending on the topology of your network.

To reset the switch, at the Boot Options# prompt, enter:

```
>> Boot Options# reset
```

You are prompted to confirm your request.

CHAPTER 10

The Maintenance Menu

The Maintenance Menu is used to manage dump information and forward database information. It also includes a debugging menu to help with troubleshooting.

/maint Maintenance Menu

NOTE – To use the Maintenance Menu, you must be logged in to the switch as the administrator.

```
[Maintenance Menu]
  sys      - System Maintenance Menu
  fdb      - Forwarding Database Manipulation Menu
  debug    - Debugging Menu
  arp      - ARP Cache Manipulation Menu
  route    - IP Route Manipulation Menu
  uudmp    - Uuencode FLASH dump
  ptdmp    - tftp put FLASH dump to tftp server
  cldmp    - Clear FLASH dump
  panic    - Dump state information to FLASH and reboot
  tsdmp    - Tech support dump
```

Dump information contains internal switch state data that is written to flash memory on the Web switch after any one of the following occurs:

- The switch administrator forces a switch *panic*. The **panic** option, found in the Maintenance Menu, causes the switch to dump state information to flash memory, and then causes the switch to reboot.
- The switch administrator enters the switch reset key combination on a device that is attached to the console port. The switch reset key combination is <Shift><Ctrl><->.
- The watchdog timer forces a switch reset. The purpose of the watchdog timer is to reboot the switch if the switch software freezes.
- The switch detects a hardware or software problem that requires a reboot.

Table 10-1 Maintenance Menu Options (/maint)

Command Syntax and Usage

sys

Displays the System Maintenance Menu. To view menu options, see [page 254](#).

fdb

Displays the Forwarding Database Manipulation Menu. To view menu options, see [page 255](#).

debug

Displays the Debugging Menu. To view menu options, see [page 256](#).

arp

Displays the ARP Cache Manipulation Menu. To view menu options, see [page 257](#).

route

Displays the IP Route Manipulation Menu. To view menu options, see [page 258](#).

uudmp

Displays dump information in uuencoded format. For details, see [page 259](#).

ptdmp

Saves the system dump information via TFTP. For details, see [page 260](#).

cltmp

Clears dump information from flash memory. For details, see [page 260](#).

panic

Dumps MP information to FLASH and reboots. For details, see [page 261](#).

tsdmp

Dumps all Web switch information, statistics, and configuration. You can log the tsdump output into a file, and send it to Alteon WebSystems Tech Support for debugging purposes.

/maint/sys

System Maintenance Options

This menu is reserved for use by Alteon WebSystems Customer Support. The options are used to perform system debugging.

/maint/fdb

Forwarding Database Options

[FDB Manipulation Menu]

- `find` - Show a single FDB entry by MAC address
- `port` - Show FDB entries for a single port
- `vlan` - Show FDB entries for a single VLAN
- `refpt` - Show FDB entries referenced by a single port
- `dump` - Show all FDB entries
- `del` - Delete an FDB entry
- `clear` - Clear entire FDB

The Forwarding Database Manipulation Menu can be used to view information and to delete a MAC address from the forwarding database or clear the entire forwarding database. This is helpful in identifying problems associated with MAC address learning and packet forwarding decisions.

Table 10-2 FDB Manipulation Menu Options (/maint/fdb)

Command Syntax and Usage

find <MAC address> [<i><VLAN></i>]
Displays a single database entry by its MAC address. You are prompted to enter the MAC address of the device. Enter the MAC address using the <code>xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx</code> format (such as <code>08:00:20:12:34:56</code>) or <code>xxxxxxxxxxxx</code> format (such as <code>080020123456</code>).
port <port number (0-9)>
Displays all FDB entries for a particular port. Use “0” for unknown port number.
vlan <VLAN number (1-4094)>
Displays all FDB entries on a single VLAN.
refpt <port number>
Displays all FDB entries reference by a single port.
dump
Displays all entries in the Forwarding Database. For details, see page 59 .
del <MAC address>
Removes a single FDB entry.
clear
Clears the entire Forwarding Database from switch memory.

/maint/debug

Debugging Options

[Miscellaneous Debug Menu]	
tbuf	- Show MP trace buffer
snap	- Show MP snap (or post-mortem) trace buffer
sptb	- Show SP trace buffer

The Miscellaneous Debug Menu displays trace buffer information about events that can be helpful in understanding switch operation. You can view the following information using the debug menu:

- Events traced by the Management Processor (MP)
- Events traced by the Switch Processor (SP)
- Events traced to a buffer area when a reset occurs

If the switch resets for any reason, the MP trace buffer and SP trace buffers are saved into the snap trace buffer area.

The output from these commands can be interpreted by the Alteon WebSystems Customer Support organization.

Table 10-3 Miscellaneous Debug Menu Options (/maint/debug)

Command Syntax and Usage

tbuf

Displays the Management Processor trace buffer. Header information similar to the following is shown:

MP trace buffer at 13:28:15 Fri May 25, 2001; mask: 0x2ffdf748

The buffer information is displayed after the header.

snap

Displays the Management Processor snap (or post-mortem) trace buffer. This buffer contains information traced at the time that a reset occurred.

sptb <port number>

Displays the Switch Processor trace buffer. Header information similar to the following is shown:

Port 1 trace buffer at 13:37:22 Fri May 25, 2001; mask: 0x00800008

The buffer information is displayed after the header.

/maint/arp

ARP Cache Options

[Address Resolution Protocol Menu]

- find - Show a single ARP entry by IP address
- port - Show ARP entries on a single port
- vlan - Show ARP entries on a single VLAN
- refpt - Show ARP entries referenced by a single port
- dump - Show all ARP entries
- add - Add a permanent ARP entry
- del - Delete an ARP entry
- clear - Clear ARP cache
- addr - Show ARP address list

Table 10-4 Address Resolution Protocol Menu Options (/maint/arp)

Command Syntax and Usage

find *<IP address>*
Shows a single ARP entry by IP address.

port *<port number>*
Shows ARP entries on a single port.

vlan *<VLAN ID>*
Shows ARP entries on a single VLAN.

refpt *<port number>*
Shows all ARP entries referenced by a single port.

dump
Shows all ARP entries.

add *<IP address> <MAC address> <VLAN number> <port>*
Adds a single ARP entry from switch memory.

del *<IP address>*
Removes a single ARP entry from switch memory.

clear
Clears the entire ARP list from switch memory.

addr
Shows the list of IP addresses which the switch will respond to for ARP requests.

NOTE – To display all ARP entries currently held in the switch, or a portion according to one of the options listed on the menu above (**find**, **port**, **vlan**, **refpt**, **dump**), you can also refer to “ARP Information” on [page 57](#).

/maint/route

IP Route Manipulation

[IP Routing Menu]	
find	- Show a single route by destination IP address
gw	- Show routes to a single gateway
type	- Show routes of a single type
tag	- Show routes of a single tag
if	- Show routes on a single interface
dump	- Show all routes
clear	- Clear route table

Table 10-5 IP Route Manipulation Menu Options (/maint/route)

Command Syntax and Usage

find *<IP address>*

Shows a single route by destination IP address.

gw *<default gateway address>*

Shows routes to a default gateway.

type *<type>* **indirect|direct|local|broadcast|martian|multicast**

Shows routes of a single type. For a description of IP routing types, see [Table 4-5 on page 55](#)

tag *<type>* **fixed|static|snmp|addr|rip|bgp|icmp|broadcast|martian|multicast|vip**

Shows routes of a single tag. For a description of IP routing tags, see [Table 4-6 on page 56](#)

if *<interface number (1-256)>*

Shows routes on a single interface.

clear

Clears the route table from switch memory.

dump

Shows all routes.

NOTE – To display all routes, you can also refer to “IP Routing Information” on [page 54](#).

/maint/uudmp

Uuencode Flash Dump

Using this command, dump information is presented in uuencoded format. This format makes it easy to capture the dump information as a file or a string of characters. You can then contact Alteon WebSystems Customer Support for help analyzing the information.

If you want to capture dump information to a file, set your communication software on your workstation to capture session data prior to issuing the `uudmp` command. This will ensure that you do not lose any information. Once entered, the `uudmp` command will cause approximately 1460 lines of data to be displayed on your screen and copied into the file.

Using the `uudmp` command, dump information can be read multiple times. The command does not cause the information to be updated or cleared from flash memory.

NOTE – Dump information is not cleared automatically. In order for any subsequent dump information to be written to flash memory, you must manually clear the dump region. For more information on clearing the dump region, see [page 260](#).

To access dump information, at the `Maintenance#` prompt, enter:

```
Maintenance# uudmp
```

The dump information is displayed on your screen and, if you have configured your communication software to do so, captured to a file. If the dump region is empty, the following appears:

```
No FLASH dump available.
```

/maint/ptdmp <server> <filename> **TFTP System Dump Put**

Use this command to put (save) the system dump to a TFTP server.

NOTE – If the TFTP server is running SunOS or the Solaris operating system, the specified **ptdmp** file must exist *prior* to executing the **ptdmp** command, and must be writable (set with proper permission, and not locked by any application). The contents of the specified file will be replaced with the current dump data.

To save dump information via TFTP, at the **Maintenance#** prompt, enter:

```
Maintenance# ptdmp server filename
```

Where *server* is the TFTP server IP address or hostname, and *filename* is the target dump file.

/maint/cltmp **Clearing Dump Information**

To clear dump information from flash memory, at the **Maintenance#** prompt, enter:

```
Maintenance# cltmp
```

The switch clears the dump region of flash memory and displays the following message:

```
FLASH dump region cleared.
```

If the flash dump region is already clear, the switch displays the following message:

```
FLASH dump region is already clear.
```

/maint/panic

Panic Command

The **panic** command causes the switch to immediately dump state information to flash memory and automatically reboot.

To select **panic**, at the Maintenance# prompt, enter:

```
Maintenance# panic
```

Enter **y** to confirm the command:

```
Confirm dump and reboot [y/n]: y
```

The following messages are displayed:

```
Starting system dump...done.  
Reboot at 11:54:08 Wednesday January 24, 2001...  
Boot version 1.0.1  
Alteon 184  
Rebooted because of console PANIC command.  
Booting complete 11:55:01 Wednesday January 24, 2001:
```

Unscheduled System Dumps

If there is an unscheduled system dump to flash memory, the following message is displayed when you log on to the switch:

Note: A system dump exists in FLASH. The dump was saved at 13:43:22 Thursday Jan 25, 2001. Use /maint/uudmp to extract the dump for analysis and /maint/cldmp to clear the FLASH region. The region must be cleared before another dump can be taken.

APPENDIX A

Web OS Syslog Messages

The following syntax is used when outputting syslog messages:

<Time stamp><Log Label>Web OS<Thread ID> : <Message>

where

■ *<Timestamp>*

The time of the message event is displayed in month day hour:minute:second format. For example: Aug 19 14:20:30

■ *<Log Label>*

The following types of log messages are recorded: LOG_EMERG, LOG_ALERT, LOG_CRIT, LOG_ERR, LOG_WARNING, LOG_NOTICE, LOG_INFO, and LOG_DEBUG

■ *<Thread ID>*

This is the software thread that reports the log message. The following thread IDs are recorded: stp, ip, slb, console, telnet, vrrp, system, web server, ssh, and bgp

■ *<Message>*: The log message

Following is a list of potential syslog messages. To keep this list as short as possible, only *<Thread ID>* and *<Message>* are shown. The messages are sorted by *<Log Label>*.

Where the *<Thread ID>* is listed as *mgmt*, one of the following may be shown: console, telnet, web server, or ssh.

LOG_ALERT

<mgmt>: ERROR: Synchronization from non-configured peer <ip_address> was blocked
 <mgmt>: new synch configuration did not apply (rc=<error_code>)
 <mgmt>: new synch configuration did not save (rc=<error_code>)
 <mgmt>: new synch configuration did not validate (rc=<error_code>)
 <mgmt>: Sync Password Failed-No Password Line
 <mgmt>: Synch Password Failed-Bad Password
 <mgmt>: WARNING: Synchronization from non-configured peer <ip_address>
 bgp: notification (<reason>) received from <BGP peer ip_address>
 bgp: session with <BGP peer ip_address> failed (<reason>)
 ip: cannot contact default gateway <ip_address>
 slb: cannot contact real server <ip_address>
 slb: cannot contact real service <ip_address:real_port>
 slb: real server <ip_address> disabled through configuration
 slb: real server <ip_address> has reached maximum connections
 slb: real server failure threshold (<threshold>) has been reach for group <group_id>
 slb: received update from <ip_address> for unknown remote server
 slb: received update from <ip_address> for unknown virtual service
 stp: own BPDU received from port <port_id>
 vrrp: received errored advertisement from <ip_address>
 vrrp: received incorrect addresses from <ip_address>
 vrrp: received incorrect advertisement interval <seconds> from <ip_address>
 vrrp: received incorrect password from <ip_address>

LOG_CRIT

system: can't allocate memory in load_MP_INT
 system: internal power supply failed
 system: redundant power supply failed
 system: temperature at sensor <sensor_id> exceeded threshhold

LOG_ERR

<mgmt>: <"apply"|"save"> is issued by another user. Try later

<mgmt>: <"Apply"|"Save"> not done

<mgmt>: A hot-standby port cannot also be an inter-switch port

<mgmt>: At least one virtual router must be enabled when group is enabled

<mgmt>: BGP peer <bgp_peer_id> have same address as IP interface <ip_interface_id>

<mgmt>: BGP peer <bgp_peer_id> IP interface <ip_interface_id> is not enabled

<mgmt>: BGP peer <bgp_peer_id> must have an IP address

<mgmt>: BGP peers <bgp_peer_id> and <bgp_peer_id> have same address

<mgmt>: Broadcast address for IP interface <interface_id> is invalid

<mgmt>: Client bindings are not supported with proxy IP addresses

<mgmt>: DAM must be turned on or a PIP must be enabled for port <port_id> in order for virtual server %lu to support FTP parsing

<mgmt>: DAM must be turned on or a PIP must be enabled for port <port_id> in order for virtual server <server_id> to support URL parsing

<mgmt>: DAM must be turned on or a PIP must be enabled for ports <port_id> in order to do URL based redirection

<mgmt>: Direct access mode is not supported with default gateway load balancing

<mgmt>: domain name must be configured

<mgmt>: duplicate default entry

<mgmt>: Dynamic NAT filter <filter_id> must be cached

<mgmt>: Enabled external lookup IP address has no IP address

<mgmt>: Enabled real server <server_id> has no IP address

<mgmt>: Enabled virtual server <server_id> has no IP address

<mgmt>: Error writing BGP changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing BWM changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing FILT changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing GSLB changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing HCS changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing IP changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing NAME changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing NTP changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing RSA changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing SLB changes to FLASH

LOG_ERR (continued)

<mgmt>: Error writing SSH changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing URL changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing URL changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Error writing VRRP changes to FLASH

<mgmt>: Extracting length has to set to 8 or 16 for cookie rewrite mode

<mgmt>: Filter with ICMP types configured (<icmp_type>) must have IP protocol configure to ICMP

<mgmt>: Filter with L4 ports configured <port_id> must have IP protocol configured

<mgmt>: For Global SLB, Web server must be moved from TCP port 80

<mgmt>: Hot-standby must be enabled when a virtual router has a PIP address

<mgmt>: intrval input value must be in the range [0-24]

<mgmt>: IP Interfaces <interface_id> and <interface_id> are on the same subnet

<mgmt>: Loadbalance string must be added to real server <server_id> in order to enable exclusionary string matching

<mgmt>: multiple static routes have same destination

<mgmt>: NAT filter <filter_id> cannot have port ranges

<mgmt>: NAT filter <filter_id> dest range includes RIP <server_id>

<mgmt>: NAT filter <filter_id> dest range includes VIP <server_id>

<mgmt>: NAT filter <filter_id> must be cached

<mgmt>: NAT filter <filter_id> must have same smask and dmask

<mgmt>: Network <static_network_id> has no VIP address

<mgmt>: New Path Cost for Port <port_id> is invalid

<mgmt>: No apply is needed, although a save is needed

<mgmt>: No apply is needed, although there are saved changes

<mgmt>: No apply needed

<mgmt>: Not all ports in trunk group <trunk_id> are in VLAN <vlan_id>

<mgmt>: Only <MAX_SLB_SERVICES> remote services are supported

<mgmt>: Only <MAX_SLB_SITES> remote servers are allowed per group

<mgmt>: Please configure primary RADIUS server address

<mgmt>: Port filtering must be disabled on port <port_id> in order to support cookie based persistence for virtual server <server_id>

<mgmt>: Port Mirroring changes are not applied

<mgmt>: Primary and secondary remote site <site_id> switches must differ

LOG_ERR (continued)

<mgmt>: PVID <vlan_id> for port <port_id> is not created

<mgmt>: RADIUS secret must be 1-32 characters long

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> (Backup for <server_id>) is not enabled

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> and group %u cannot both have backups configured

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> cannot be added to same group

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> cannot be backup server for both real server <server_id> and group <group_id>

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> has same IP address as IP interface <interface_id>

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> has same IP address as real server <server_id>

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> has same IP address as switch

<mgmt>: Real server <server_id> has same IP address as virtual server<server_id>

<mgmt>: Real server group <group_id> cannot backup itself

<mgmt>: Redirection filter <filter_id> must be cached

<mgmt>: Remote site <site_id> and real server <server_id> must use different addresses

<mgmt>: Remote site <site_id> and virtual server <server_id> must use different addresses

<mgmt>: Remote site <site_id> does not have a primary IP address

<mgmt>: Remote sites <site_id> and <site_id> must use different addresses

<mgmt>: RS <server_id> can't exist for VS <server_id> vport <virtual_port>

<mgmt>: Save not done

<mgmt>: Save the configuration before resetting switch

<mgmt>: SLB Radius secret must be 16 characters long

<mgmt>: STP changes can't be applied since STP is OFF

<mgmt>: Switch cannot support more than <MAX_SMT> real services

<mgmt>: Switch cannot support more than <MAX_VIRT_SERVICES> virtual services

<mgmt>: Switch port <port_id> has same IP address as IP interface <interface_id>

<mgmt>: Switch port <port_id> has same proxy IP address as port <port_id>

<mgmt>: Switch reset is required to turn STP on/off

<mgmt>: There must be at least one inter-switch port if any hot-standby port exist

<mgmt>: Trunk group (<trunk_id>) ports must all have a PIP

<mgmt>: Trunk group (<trunk_id>) ports must have same L4 config

<mgmt>: Trunk group <trunk_id> contains no ports but is enabled

<mgmt>: Trunk group <trunk_id> contains ports with different PVIDs

<mgmt>: Trunk group <trunk_id> has more than <max_trunk_ports> ports

LOG_ERR (continued)

<mgmt>: Trunk groups <trunk_id> and <trunk_id> can not share the same port

<mgmt>: Two services have same hostname, <host_name>.<domain_name>

<mgmt>: Two services have same hostname, <host_name>.<domain_name>

<mgmt>: Virtual router <vr_id> cannot have same IP address as <ip_address>

<mgmt>: Virtual router <vr_id> cannot have same VRID and VLAN as <vlan_id>

<mgmt>: Virtual router <vr_id> corresponding virtual server <server_id> is not enabled

<mgmt>: Virtual router <vr_id> IP interface should be <interface_id>

<mgmt>: Virtual router <vr_id> must have an IP address

<mgmt>: Virtual router <vr_id> must have sharing disabled when hotstandby is enabled

<mgmt>: Virtual router group must be enabled when hotstandby is enabled

<mgmt>: Virtual router group must have preemption enabled when hotstandby is enabled

<mgmt>: Virtual router group must have sharing disabled when hotstandby is enabled

<mgmt>: Virtual server %lu: support nonat IP but not layer 3 bindings

<mgmt>: Virtual server <server_id> has same IP address and vport as virtual server <server_id>

<mgmt>: Virtual server <server_id> has same IP address as IP interface <interface_id>

<mgmt>: Virtual server <server_id> has same IP address as switch

<mgmt>: Virtual server <server_id>: port mapping but Direct Access Mode

<mgmt>: Virtual server <server_id>: port mapping but layer3 bindings

<mgmt>: Virtual server <server_id>: UDP service <virtual_port> with out-of-range port number

<mgmt>: Virtual servers <server_id> and <server_id> that include the same real server <server_id> cannot map the same real port or balance UDP

<mgmt>: Virtual servers <server_id> and <server_id> with same IP address must support same layer3 configuration

<mgmt>: Virtual servers: all that support IP must use same group

<mgmt>: VLAN <vlan_id> has a member port that can not support jumbo frame

<mgmt>: With VMA, ports 1-8 must all have a PIP if any one does

ip: cannot contact NTP server <ip_address>

ip: unable to listen to NTP port

LOG_NOTICE

<mgmt>: boot config block changed

<mgmt>: boot image changed

<mgmt>: second syslog host changed to <ip_address>

<mgmt>: switch reset from CLI

<mgmt>: syslog host changed to <ip_address>

system: internal power supply ok

system: rebooted <last_reset_information>

system: rebooted <last_reset_information> administrator logged in <mgmt>:

Next boot will use new software image<1|2>

system: redundant power supply present and ok

LOG_WARNING

slb: filter <filter_id> fired on port <port_id>, <source_ip> -> <dest_ip>



APPENDIX B

Web OS SNMP Agent

The Web OS SNMP agent supports SNMP Version 1. Security is provided through SNMP community strings. The default community strings are “public” for SNMP GET operation and “private” for SNMP SET operation. The community string can be modified only through the Command Line Interface (CLI). Alteon WebSystems is registered as Vendor 1872. Detailed SNMP MIBs and trap definitions of the Web OS SNMP agent can be found in the following Alteon WebSystems enterprise MIB documents:

- Altroot.mib - Alteon product registrations which are returned as sysObjectID.
- Altswitch.mib - Alteon enterprise MIB definitions.
- Alttrap.mib - Alteon enterprise trap definitions.

Users may specify up to two trap hosts for receiving SNMP Traps. The agent will send the SNMP Trap to the specified hosts when appropriate. Traps will not be sent if there is no host specified.

Web OS SNMP agent supports the following standard MIBs:

- RFC 1213 - MIB II (System, Interface, Address Translation, IP, ICMP, TCP, UDP, SNMP Groups)
- RFC 1573 - MIB II Extension (IFX table)
- RFC 1643 - EtherLike MIB
- RFC 1493 - Bridge MIB
- RFC 1757 - RMON MIB (Statistics, History, Alarm, Event Groups)

Web OS SNMP agent supports the following generic traps as defined in RFC 1215:

- ColdStart
- WarmStart
- LinkDown
- LinkUp
- AuthenticationFailure

The SNMP agent also supports two Spanning Tree traps as defined in RFC 1493:

- NewRoot
- TopologyChange

The following are the enterprise SNMP traps supported in Web OS:

Table 10-6 Web OS-Supported Enterprise SNMP Traps

Trap Name	Description
altSwPrimaryPowerSupplyFailure	Signifies that the primary power supply failed.
altSwRedunPowerSupplyFailure	Signifies that the redundant power supply failed.
altSwDefGwUp	Signifies that the default gateway defined is alive.
altSwDefGwDown	Signifies that the default gateway defined is down
altSwDefGwInService	Signifies that the default gateway is up and in service
altSwDefGwNotInService	Signifies that the default gateway is alive but not in service
altSwSlbRealServerUp	Signifies that the real server is up and operational
altSwSlbRealServerDown	Signifies that the real server is down and out of service
altSwSlbRealServerMaxConnReached	Signifies that the real server has reached maximum connections
altSwSlbBkupRealServerAct	Signifies that the backup real server is activated due to availability of the primary real server
altSwSlbBkupRealServerDeact	Signifies that the backup real server is deactivated due to the primary real server is available
altSwSlbBkupRealServerActOverflow	Signifies that the backup real server is deactivated due to the primary real server is overflowed
altSwSlbBkupRealServerDeactOverflow	Signifies that the backup real server is deactivated due to the primary real server is out from overflow situation
altSwSlbFailoverStandby	Signifies that the switch is now a standby switch
altSwSlbFailoverActive	Signifies that the switch is now an active switch
altSwSlbFailoverSwitchUp	Signifies that the failover switch is alive
altSwSlbFailoverSwitchDown	Signifies that the failover switch is down
altSwfltFilterFired	Signifies that the packet received on a switch port matches the filter rule
altSwSlbRealServerServiceUp	Signifies that the service port of the real server is up and operational
altSwSlbRealServerServiceDown	Signifies that the service port of the real server is down and out of service

Glossary

DIP (Destination IP Address)	The destination IP address of a frame.
Dport (Destination Port)	The destination port (application socket: for example, http-80/https-443/DNS-53)
NAT (Network Address Translation)	Any time an IP address is changed from one source IP or destination IP address to another address, network address translation can be said to have taken place. In general, half NAT is when the destination IP or source IP address is changed from one address to another. Full NAT is when both addresses are changed from one address to another. No NAT is when neither source nor destination IP addresses are translated. Virtual server-based load balancing uses half NAT by design, because it translates the destination IP address from the Virtual Server IP address, to that of one of the real servers.
Preemption	In VRRP, preemption will cause a Virtual Router that has a lower priority to go into backup should a peer Virtual Router start advertising with a higher priority.
Priority	In VRRP, the value given to a Virtual Router to determine its ranking with its peer(s). Minimum value is 1 and maximum value is 254. Default is 100. A higher number will win out for master designation.
Proto (Protocol)	The protocol of a frame. Can be any value represented by a 8-bit value in the IP header adherent to the IP specification (for example, TCP, UDP, OSPF, ICMP, and so on.)
Real Server Group	A group of real servers that are associated with a Virtual Server IP address, or a filter.
Redirection or Filter-Based Load Balancing	A type of load balancing that operates differently from virtual server-based load balancing. With this type of load balancing, requests are transparently intercepted and “redirected” to a server group. “Transparently” means that requests are not specifically destined for a Virtual Server IP address that the switch owns. Instead, a filter is configured in the switch. This filter intercepts traffic based on certain IP header criteria and load balances it. Filters can be configured to filter on the SIP/Range (via netmask), DIP/Range (via netmask), Protocol, SPort/Range or DPort/Range. The action on a filter can be Allow, Deny, Redirect to a Server Group, or NAT (translation of either the source IP or destination IP address). In redirection-based load balancing, the destination IP address is not translated to that of one of the real servers. Therefore, redirection-based load balancing is designed to load balance devices that normally operate transparently in your network—such as a firewall, spam filter, or transparent Web cache.
RIP (Real Server)	Real Server IP Address. An IP addresses that the switch load balances to when requests are made to a Virtual Server IP address (VIP).

SIP (Source IP Address)	The source IP address of a frame.
SPort (Source Port)	The source port (application socket: for example, HTTP-80/HTTPS-443/DNS-53).
Tracking	In VRRP, a method to increase the priority of a virtual router and thus master designation (with preemption enabled). Tracking can be very valuable in an active/active configuration. You can track the following: ■ Vrs: Virtual Routers in Master Mode (increments priority by 2 for each) ■ Ifs: Active IP interfaces on the Web switch (increments priority by 2 for each) ■ Ports: Active ports on the same VLAN (increments priority by 2 for each) ■ l4pts: Active Layer 4 Ports, client or server designation (increments priority by 2 for each) ■ reals: healthy real servers (increments by 2 for each healthy real server) ■ hsrp: HSRP announcements heard on a client designated port (increments by 10 for each)
VIP (Virtual Server IP Address)	An IP address that the switch owns and uses to load balance particular service requests (like HTTP) to other servers.
VIR (Virtual Interface Router)	A VRRP address that is an IP interface address shared between two or more virtual routers.
Virtual Router	A shared address between two devices utilizing VRRP, as defined in RFC 2338. One virtual router is associated with an IP interface. This is one of the IP interfaces that the switch is assigned. All IP interfaces on the Alteon Web switches must be in a VLAN. If there is more than one VLAN defined on the Web switch, then the VRRP broadcasts will only be sent out on the VLAN of which the associated IP interface is a member.
Virtual Server Load Balancing	Classic load balancing. Requests destined for a Virtual Server IP address (VIP), which is owned by the switch, are load balanced to a real server contained in the group associated with the VIP. Network address translation is done back and forth, by the switch, as requests come and go. Frames come to the switch destined for the VIP. The switch then replaces the VIP and with one of the real server IP addresses (RIP's), updates the relevant checksums, and forwards the frame to the server for which it is now destined. This process of replacing the destination IP (VIP) with one of the real server addresses is called half NAT. If the frames were not half NAT'ed to the address of one of the RIPs, a server would receive the frame that was destined for it's MAC address, forcing the packet up to Layer 3. The server would then drop the frame, since the packet would have the DIP of the VIP and not that of the server (RIP).
VRID (Virtual Router Identifier)	In VRRP, a value between 1 and 255 that is used by each virtual router to create its MAC address and identify its peer for which it is sharing this VRRP address. The VRRP MAC address as defined in the RFC is 00-00-5E-00-01-{VRID}. If you have a VRRP address that two switches are sharing, then the VRID number needs to be identical on both switches so each virtual router on each switch knows whom to share with.

VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol)

A protocol that acts very similarly to Cisco's proprietary HSRP address sharing protocol. The reason for both of these protocols is so devices have a next hop or default gateway that is always available. Two or more devices sharing an IP interface are either advertising or listening for advertisements. These advertisements are sent via a broadcast message to an address such as 224.0.0.18.

With VRRP, one switch is considered the master and the other the backup. The master is always advertising via the broadcasts. The backup switch is always listening for the broadcasts. Should the master stop advertising, the backup will take over ownership of the VRRP IP and MAC addresses as defined by the specification. The switch announces this change in ownership to the devices around it by way of a Gratuitous ARP, and advertisements. If the backup switch didn't do the Gratuitous ARP the Layer 2 devices attached to the switch would not know that the MAC address had moved in the network. For a more detailed description, refer to RFC 2338.

VSR (Virtual Server Router)

A VRRP address that is a shared Virtual Server IP address. VSR is Alteon WebSystems' proprietary extension to the VRRP specification. The switches must be able to share Virtual Server IP addresses, as well as IP interfaces. If they didn't, the two switches would fight for ownership of the Virtual Server IP address, and the ARP tables in the devices around them would have two ARP entries with the same IP address but different MAC addresses.



Index

Symbols

/.....	43
? (help).....	43
[].....	13

A

abbreviating commands (CLI)	46
ack (SLB filtering option)	212
actio (SLB filtering option)	207
activating optional software.....	244
active configuration block	119, 251
active switch, saving and loading configuration....	184
add	
ARP entry.....	257
SLB port option.....	216
SLB virtual server option	200
addr	
IP route tag	56
address list	
ARP entries.....	257
Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	
add, delete entries	257
address list	257
interval.....	134
statistics.....	76
administrator account.....	20, 23
admpw (system option)	128
aging	
STP bridge option	154
STP information	65
application health checking	194
application redirection	188, 207
filter states	51
filters.....	187
within real server groups.....	193
apply (global command).....	118

applying configuration changes.....	118
ARP. <i>See</i> Address Resolution Protocol.	
ASCII terminal	16
authentication, application health checking	232
autoconfiguration	
duplex mode.....	28
link.....	28, 29
port speed.....	28
auto-negotiation.....	28
configuring flow control.....	131
enable/disable on port	132
setup.....	28, 29

B

backup	
SLB real server group option	195
SLB real server option	189
backup configuration block.....	119, 251
backup connector (back), Port Menu option.....	129
backup server activations (SLB statistics)	100
banner (system option)	121
baud rate	
console connection	16
BGP	
configuration	141
filters.....	145
bgp	
IP route tag.....	56
BGP Peers.....	143
binding failure	99
binding table	202
BLOCKING (port state)	65
Boot Options Menu.....	247
BOOTP	17
setup (enable/disable)	27
system option	121

Border Gateway Protocol	56
configuration.....	141
BPDU. <i>See</i> Bridge Protocol Data Unit.	
bridge parameter menu, for STP	152
bridge priority	65
Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU)	65
STP transmission frequency.....	153
Bridge Spanning-Tree parameters.....	153
broadcast	
IP route tag	56
IP route type	55
broadcast IP address	33

C

capture dump information to a file	259
Cisco EtherChannel	160
clear	
ARP entries	257
dump information	260
FDB entry.....	255
routing table.....	258
client traffic processing.....	215
Command-Line Interface (CLI)	15 to 21, 23, 41
commands	
abbreviations.....	46
conventions used in this manual	13
shortcuts	46
stacking.....	46
tab completion.....	46
configuration	
administrator password	128
apply changes.....	118
default gateway interval, for health checks	136
default gateway IP address	136
dump command	183
effect on Spanning-Tree Protocol	118
Fast Ethernet	129
flow control.....	131
Gigabit Ethernet.....	129
IP broadcast address	134
IP static route	137
Layer 4 administrator password	128
operating mode	131
port link speed	131
route cache.....	138
save changes	119
setup command.....	182
switch IP address	134
user password.....	127
view changes.....	118
VLAN default (PVID).....	130
VLAN IP interface.....	135
VLAN tagging.....	130
configuration block	
active	251
backup.....	251
factory	251
selection	251
connecting	
via console	16
via Telnet.....	17
connection timeout (Real Server Menu option).....	202
console port	
communication settings	16
connecting	16
contacting Alteon WebSystems.....	14
cost	
STP information	65
STP port option	155
counters	
No Server Available (dropped frames).....	100
cur (system option)	125, 126
current bindings.....	99
customer support	14

D

date	
setup	25
system option	120
debugging.....	253
default gateway	
information	50, 68
interval, for health checks	136
metrics	149
round robin, load balancing for	149
default password	20
delete	
ARP entry	257
FDB entry	255
deny (filtering)	100
diff (global) command, viewing changes	118
dip (destination IP address for filtering)	209
dir (port mirroring option)	239
direct (IP route type)	55
DISABLED (port state)	65
disconnect idle timeout	21
Distributed Site State Protocol (DSSP)	
setting update interval	218
dmask	
destination mask for filtering	209
Domain Name System (DNS)	
health checks	194
peer site handoffs	218
downloading software	248
dropped frames (No Server Available) counter	100
dump	
configuration command	183
maintenance	253
state information	261
duplex mode	28
link status	49, 63
setup	28
dynamic routes	258

E

EtherChannel	
as used with port trunking	160

F

factory configuration block	251
factory default configuration	21, 23, 24
Fast Ethernet, configuring ports for	129

filter statistics	87
filtered (denied) frames	100
filters	
IP address ranges	209
first-time configuration	21, 23 to 39
fixed	
IP route tag	56
flag field	58
flow control	49, 63
configuring	131
setup	28, 29
forwarding database (FDB)	253
delete entry	255
Forwarding Database Information Menu	59
Forwarding Database Menu	255
forwarding state (FWD)	60, 65, 70
FTP server health checks	194
full-duplex	28
fwd (STP bridge option)	153
FwdDel (forward delay), bridge port	65

G

gig (Port Menu option)	129
Gigabit Ethernet	
configuration	129
Greenwich	126
Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)	126
gtcfg (TFTP load command)	184

H

half-duplex	28
hash metric	196
health checking (SLB real server group option)	194
health checks	190
default gateway interval, retries	136
layer information	51
parameters for most protocols	194
redirection (rport)	208
hello	
STP information	65
help	43
Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP)	
priority increment value for L4 client ports	173
use with VRRP	166, 167, 171
VRRP priority increment value	173, 174
HP-OpenView	15
HSRP. <i>See</i> Hot Standby Router Protocol.	

HTTP	
application health checks	194
redirects (Global SLB option)	219
system option	121
I	
ICMP	
IP route tag	56
Layer 3 health checks	194
idle timeout	
overview	21
IEEE standards	
802.1d Spanning-Tree Protocol	64, 152
image	
downloading	248
software, selecting	249
IMAP server health checks	194
imask (IP address mask)	231
in (port mirroring option)	239
incorrect VIPs (statistic)	99
incorrect Vports (dropped frames counter)	100
indirect (IP route type)	55
Information Menu	47
intr	
SLB real server option	190
IP address	32
ARP information	57
BOOTP	17
configuring default gateway	136
filter ranges	209
IP interface	32
local route cache ranges	139
Telnet	17
IP address mask (mmask)	121
IP address mask for SLB	231
IP configuration via setup	32
IP forwarding	146
IP forwarding information	50, 68
IP Forwarding Menu	138
IP Information Menu	50, 68
IP interface	134
broadcast address (broad)	134
configuring address	134
configuring VLANs	135
IP interfaces	32, 55
information	50, 68
IP route tag	56
priority increment value (ifs) for VRRP	173
IP Port Menu	146
IP Route Manipulation Menu	258
IP routing	32
tag parameters	56
IP Static Route Menu	137
IP subnet mask	32
IP, switch processor statistics for	76
J	
jumbo frames	
setup	30
L	
l4apw (L4 administrator system option)	128
Layer 4	
administrator account	20
LEARNING (port state)	65
least connections (SLB Real Server metric)	196
licence certificate	244
license password	244
lines (display option)	44
link	
speed, configuring	131
link status	
command	63
duplex mode	49, 63
port speed	49, 63
linkt (SNMP option)	158
LISTENING (port state)	65
lmask (routing option)	50, 68
lnet (routing option)	50, 68
local (IP route type)	55
local route cache	
IP address ranges for	139
M	
MAC (media access control) address .. 48, 57, 59, 61,	
244, 255	
switch location	17
Main Menu	41
Command-Line Interface (CLI)	21
summary	42
Maintenance Menu	253
Management Processor (MP)	256
display MAC address	48, 61
manual style conventions	13

martian	
IP route tag (filtered)	56
IP route type (filtered out)	55
mask	
IP interface subnet address	134
MaxAge (STP information)	65
mcon (maximum connections)	100, 195
SLB real server option	189
media access control. <i>See</i> MAC address.	
metrc (SLB real server group option)	193
metrics, SLB	196
minimum misses (SLB real server metric)	196
Miscellaneous Debug Menu	256
mmask	
IP address mask for SLB	231
system option	121
mnet	
management traffic IP address for SLB	231
system option	121
monitor port	158, 238
MP. <i>See</i> Management Processor.	
multicast	
IP route tag	56
IP route type	55

N

Network Address Translation (NAT)	
filter action	207
network analyzer	238
network management	15
network performance	238
non TCP/IP frames	99

O

online help	43
operating mode, configuring	131
Operations Menu	235
Operations-Level Port Mirroring Options Menu ...	238
Operations-Level Port Options	237
operations-level SLB options	240
operations-level VRRP options	241, 243
optional software	50, 73
activating	244
removing	245
out (port mirroring option)	239
overflow server activations	100
overflow servers	189

P

panic	
command	261
switch (and Maintenance Menu option)	253
parameters	
tag	56
type	55
password	
administrator account	20
default	20
L4 administrator account	20
user account	19
VRRP authentication	172
passwords	19
persistent bindings	
real server	202
ping	43, 188
poisoned reverse, as used with split horizon	140
POP3	
server health checks	194
port flow control. <i>See</i> flow control.	
Port Menu	
configuration options	129
configuring Fast Ethernet	129
configuring Gigabit Ethernet (gig)	129
port mirroring	
menu options	159
port speed	49, 63
auto-sense	28
setup	28
port states	
UNK (unknown)	60
port trunking	
description	160
ports	
configuration	27
disabling (temporarily)	132
information	67
IP status	50, 68
membership of the VLAN	49, 66
priority	65
SLB state information	51
STP port priority	155
VLAN ID	49, 67
preemption	
assuming VRRP master routing authority	165
virtual router	164, 168
preferred connector (pref), Port Menu option	129

priority (STP port option).....	155
proxies	
IP address translation	190
proxy IP address (PIP)	51
ptcfg (TFTP save command)	183
PVID (port VLAN ID).....	49, 67
pwd	43

Q

quiet (screen display option).....	44
------------------------------------	----

R

RADIUS	
server authentication	194, 232
read community string (SNMP option)	157
real server	
menu options	188
statistics	85
real server groups	
combining servers into	193
statistics	86
real servers	
backup	195
priority increment value (reals) for VRRP.....	173
SLB state information	51
reboot	253, 261
receive flow control.....	28, 29, 131
redir (SLB filtering option)	207
reference ports	60
remote site servers.....	190
removing optional software	245
reset key combination	253
restarting switch setup	25
restr (SLB real server UDP option)	190
retry	
health checks for default gateway	136
SLB real server option.....	190
rip	
IP route tag	56
RIP. <i>See</i> Routing Information Protocol.	
RIP1 information	68
rmkey	245
round robin	
as used in gateway load balancing.....	149
roundrobin	
SLB Real Server metric.....	196

route	
cache configuration	138
switch statistics for Route protocol.....	76
Routing Information Protocol (RIP)	56
options	140
poisoned reverse	140
split horizon	140
version 1 parameters.....	140
Routing Information Protocol Menu	140
RTSP SLB Statistics	98
rx flow control	28, 29

S

save (global command)	119
noback option.....	119
save command.....	251
serial cable.....	16
Server Load Balancing	
client traffic processing.....	215
information	51
menu options	187
metrics	196
operations-level options	240
port options	216
real server group options.....	195
real server weights	189
server traffic processing	215
Server Load Balancing Maintenance Statistics Menu ..	93, 95, 99
Server Load Balancing Metrics	196
server port mapping	51
server traffic processing	215
Session Binding Table	189
session identifier.....	199
setup command, configuration	182

setup facility	21, 23	state information, client system	202
BOOTP	27	static	
duplex mode	28	IP route tag	56
IP configuration	32	static (IP route tag)	56
IP subnet mask	32	statistics	
jumbo frames	30	ARP	76
port auto-negotiation mode	28, 29	Statistics Menu	75
port configuration	27	stopping switch setup	25
port flow control	28, 29	subnet address mask configuration	
port speed	28	IP subnet address	134
restarting	25	subnet mask	32
Spanning-Tree Protocol	27	subnets	32
starting	24	IP interface	134
stopping	25	switch	
system date	25	name and location	48, 61
system time	26	resetting	251
VLAN name	30	Switch Processor (SP)	256
VLAN port numbers	31	display trace buffer	256
VLAN tagging	29	swkey	244
VLANs	30	synchronization	
shortcuts (CLI)	46	VRRP switch	229, 240
SIP (source IP address for filtering)	209	system	
smask		contact (SNMP option)	157
source mask for filtering	209	date and time	48, 61
SMTP server health checks	194	information	61
snap traces		location (SNMP option)	157
buffer	256	System Maintenance Menu	254
SNMP	15, 76	system options	
HP-OpenView	15	admpw (administrator password)	128
IP route tag	56	BOOTP	121
menu options	157	cur (current system parameters)	125, 126
set and get access	157	date	120
software		HTTP access	121
image	248	l4apw (Layer 4 administrator password)	128
image file and version	48, 61	login banner	121
license	244	mmask	121
Spanning-Tree Protocol	70, 118	mnet	121
bridge aging option	154	time	121
bridge parameters	153	usrpw (user password)	127
bridge priority	65	wport	121
port cost option	155	system parameters, current	125, 126
port priority option	155		
root bridge	65, 153		
setup (on/off)	27		
switch reset effect	251		
split horizon	140		
stacking commands (CLI)	46		
starting switch setup	24		
state (STP information)	65		

T

tab completion (CLI)	46
----------------------------	----

TCP	76
ACK flag	212
fragments	99, 199
health checking using	190
health checks	194
source and destination ports	207
Telnet	17
BOOTP	17
configuring switches using	183
terminal emulation	16
text conventions	13
TFTP	248
PUT and GET commands	183
time	
setup	26
system option	121
timeouts	
idle connection	21
port mirroring option	239
time-to-live, DNS response (Global SLB option)	218
trace buffer	256
Switch Processor	256
traceroute	43
transmit flow control	28, 29, 131
transparent proxies, when used for NAT	208
tx flow control	28, 29
type parameters	55
typographic conventions, manual	13

U

UDP	76
datagrams	99
server status using	190
source and destination ports	207
unknown (UNK) port state	60
Unscheduled System Dump	262
upgrade, switch software	248
URL for health checks	51
user account	19
usrpw (system option)	127
Uuencode Flash Dump	259

V

verbose	44
vip	
IP route tag	56
virtual IP address (VIP)	51

virtual port state, SLB information about	51
Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)	
authentication parameters for IP interfaces	172
configuration menu options	162, 175
operations-level options	241, 243
password, authentication	172
priority tracking options	143, 145, 166
virtual router options	164, 168
virtual routers	
description	163, 168
HSRP failover	166, 167, 171
HSRP priority increment value	173, 174
increasing priority level of	165
master preemption (prio)	164, 168
priority increment values (vrs) for VRRP	173
virtual servers	195
SLB state information	51
statistics	87
VLAN tagging	
port configuration	130
port restrictions	151
setup	29
VLANs	32
ARP entry information	57
information	66
interface	33
name	49, 66
name setup	30
port membership	49, 66
port numbers	31
setting default number (PVID)	130
setup	30
tagging	29, 49, 67, 151
VRID (virtual router ID)	163, 168

W

WAP SLB Statistics	98
watchdog timer	253
web-based management interface	15
weights	
for SLB real servers	189, 197
setting virtual router priority values	173
wport	121
write community string (SNMP option)	157